MIDDLE HIGH GERMAN SERIES · VOLUME 20

Tristan

Heinrich von Freiberg

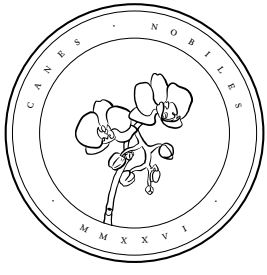
Tristan

The Second Isolde and the Death of the Lovers

---

with a word-for-word interlinear English translation

preserving the original word order

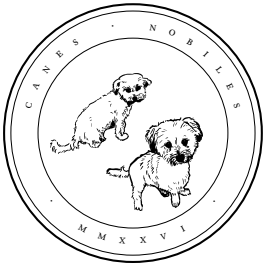


CANES NOBILES · MMXXVI

Copyright © 2026 Christopher Hench
All rights reserved

Published by Canes Nobiles
canesnobiles.com

The source text is in the public domain



Volume 20 of the Canes Nobiles Middle High German interlinear texts

The Middle High German text follows Heinrich von Freiberg, mit Einleitungen über Stil, Sprache, Metrik, Quellen und die Persönlichkeit des Dichters herausgegeben von Alois Bernt (Halle a. S.: Max Niemeyer, 1906), the Tristan, pp. 1–211

Translated and composed with AI, edited by Christopher Hench
Artwork by Esther Steves

The verses are numbered as Bernt numbers them, every fifth verse in the outer margin. The paragraphs are his; the reading sections and their English heads are this press's.

CONTENTS

I · The Two Isoldes 7
II · The Wedding at Karke 29
III · The Ring 49
IV · The Vow 66
V · The Round Table 82
VI · Tristan and Gawain 104
VII · Keie and Dalkors 122
VIII · The Hunt Toward Tintagel 142
IX · Arthur at Tintagel 158
X · The Scythes 176
XI · The Escape from the Stake 191
XII · The Life in the Forest 214
XIII · The Water 231
XIV · Petitcriu 249
XV · The Procession 264
XVI · The Tent by the River 287
XVII · The Enchanted Pillow 305
XVIII · Peilnetosi 324
XIX · Pfelerin 343
XX · The Keys of Gamarke 365
XXI · The Black Sail 387
XXII · The Death of Isolde 404
XXIII · The Rose and the Vine 419

Heinrich takes up the tale where Gottfried left it, at the bidding of a Bohemian lord, Reinmund of Lichtenburg. Tristan, at Karke in Arundel, is torn between Isolde of Ireland and Isolde of the White Hands. Judging his love for his uncle's wife a sin, he draws his heart away from the queen, and the poet adds that a star the lovers shared no longer shines for him. Tristan tells Kaedin he loves his sister and asks his help to win her.

Wâ nu rîcher künste hort,
Where now of-rich arts hoard,

wâ schœne rede, wâ blüende wort,
where fair speech, where blooming words,

wâ vünde vîolîn gevar,
where inventions violet colored,

wâ sprüche sam die rôsen clâr,
where sayings like the roses bright,

wâ sinnic saz, wâ vündic sin?
where thoughtful setting, where inventive sense?

der aller ich ein weise bin.
of-them all I an orphan am.

getichtes des gar spêhen,
of-poetry the very artful,

des rîchen und des wêhen
the rich and the splendid

bin ich ein erbelôser man
am I a heirless man

und hân mich doch genumen an
and have myself yet taken on

zu volbringene diz mêr,
to complete this tale,

daz sô blüende hât unz her
which so blooming has until hither

mit schœner rede betichtet
with fair speech composed

und meisterlîch berichtet
and masterly set-forth

mîn hêrre meister Gotfrit
my lord master Gottfried

von Strâzburc, der sô mangen snit,
of Strassburg, who so many-a cut,

spêhen unde rîchen,
artful and rich,

schône unde meisterlîchen
beautifully and masterly

nâch durnechtiges meisters siten
after consummate master's manners

ûz blüendem sinne hât gesniten
out-of blooming mind has cut

und hât sô rîcher rede cleit
and has so rich speech's garment

disem sinne an geleit,
to-this sense on laid,

dise materien er hât
this matter he has

gesprenzet in sô lichte wât,
adorned in so bright clothing,

daz ich zwîvele dar an,
that I doubt there on,

ob ich indert vinden kan
whether I anywhere find can

in mînes sinnes gehüge
in my mind's memory

rede, die wol stênde tüge
speech, that well standing would-serve

bî disen sprüchen guldîn.
beside these sayings golden.

nu muge wir nicht gehaben sîn:
now may we not have of-him:

got unser schepfer daz gebôt,
God our creator that ordained,

daz in genumen hât der tôt
that him taken has the death

hin von dirre brœden werlt.
away from this frail world.

wol geblüemet und wol geberlt
well flowered and well pearled

ist sîner blüenden vünde kranz,
is of-his blooming inventions garland,

vil reine, lûter unde glanz
very pure, clear and bright

ist sîner rîcher künste hort. —
is of-his rich arts hoard.—

die tôten mit den tôten dort,
the dead with the dead there,

die lebenden mit den lebenden hie!
the living with the living here!

sint daz er diz buoch verlie
since that he this book left

und sîn nicht hât voltichtet
and of-it not has completed

und tichtende berichtet
and composing set-forth

mit dem getichte sînen,
with the poem his,

dem reinen und dem fînen,
the pure and the fine,

sô hân ich mich genumen an,
so have I myself taken on,

ich tummer künstelôser man,
I foolish artless man,

daz ich ez volbringen wil
that I it complete will

mit rede unz an daz jâmerzil,
with speech until at the misery-goal,

daz Tristan und die blunde Isôt
that Tristan and the blonde Isolde

in glüender minne lâgen tôt,
in glowing love lay dead,

ob er mich lât sô lange leben,
if he me lets so long live,

der lîp und leben mir hât gegeben.
who body and life to-me has given.

Daz aber ich dise arbeit
That however I this labor

hân mînem sinne vür geleit,
have to-my mind before laid,

daz machet eines hêrren tugent;
that makes a lord's virtue;

sîn hôhez adel, sîn edele jugent
his high nobility, his noble youth

ez mir gebot und mich sîn bat.
it to-me commanded and me of-it bade.

der triuwen stîc, der züchte pfat
the faithfulness's path, the breeding's track

hât er mit an gebornen triten
has he with in born steps

gebent nâch hêrlîchen siten,
leveled after lordly manners,

vrowen Êren amîs ûz erkorn.
Lady Honor's lover out chosen.

in Bêhemlant ist er geborn,
in Bohemia is he born,

dem ich diz seneclîche mêr
for-whom I this yearning tale

mit inneclîches herzen ger
with heartfelt heart's desire

voltichten und volbringen sol.
complete and accomplish shall.

an dem ist daz erkennet wol,
in him is that recognized well,

daz er mit tugentlîcher tât
that he with virtuous deed

vil hôer wirde erworben hât,
very high worth won has,

zucht, mâze mit bescheidenheit;
breeding, measure with discretion;

sîn ellenthaftez herze treit
his valiant heart bears

manheit, triuwe und milde.
manliness, faithfulness and bounty.

er ist ouch under schilde
he is also under shield

ein ritter vrech und gar kurtois
a knight bold and very courteous

und ist ein Liuchtenburgonois.
and is a Lichtenburger.

von Liuchtenburc ist er genant.
of Lichtenburg is he named.

sîn name in êren ist bekant
his name in honors is known

und ist genennet er Reinmunt.
and is named he Reinmund.

jâ reine in sînes herzen grunt
yes pure in his heart's ground

ist er âne allez kunterfeit,
is he without all counterfeit,

der rechten reinen reinekeit
of-the true pure purity

gar sîner tât und sîner werc,
wholly of-his deed and of-his works,

dem ich Heinrîch von Vrîberc
for-whom I Heinrich of Freiberg

voltichte disen Tristan,
complete this Tristan,

als ich allerbeste kan.
as I very-best can.

Wir hân gehôrt, wie Tristant
We have heard, how Tristan

in Arundelê daz lant
into Arundel the land

zu dem herzogen quam,
to the duke came,

dem hôer êren vil gezam,
whom high honors much befitted,

den man dâ nante Lovelîn;
whom one there named Jovelin;

Karsîe hiez die herzogîn,
Karsie was-called the duchess,

ir beider sun Kâedîn.
their both son Kaedin.

wie der tet an im triuwe schîn
how he did on him faithfulness show

(der junge süeze Lîfrenîs
(the young sweet Lifrenis

mit aller tât, in alle wîs
with all deed, in all ways

er im geselleschaft erbôt),
he to-him companionship offered),

und wie die wîzgehande Isôt
and how the white-handed Isolde

Blanschemanîs die schœne maget,
Blanschemanis the fair maiden,

volwachsen unde wol betaget
full-grown and well aged

in megetlîchen jâren,
in maidenly years,

sîner minne vâren
his love to-pursue

mit allem vlîze began,
with all diligence began,

und wie der edele Tristan
and how the noble Tristan

mit sîner sigebêren hant
with his victorious hand

des vürsten vînde überwant
the prince's foes overcame

und von dem lande sie vertreip,
and from the land them drove,

und wie er dâ zu Karke bleip:
and how he there at Karke stayed:

daz hab wir allez wol vernumen.
that have we all well heard.

nu sulle wir zu der rede kumen,
now shall we to the tale come,

dâ sie der meister hât verlân,
where it the master has left,

der dises buoches êrste began.
who of-this book first began.

Der trûrige Tristan,
The sad Tristan,

dem trûren was geboren an
to-whom mourning was born on

und vil trûrens het gepflogen
and much mourning had practiced

und in trûren was erzogen,
and in mourning was raised,

gar trûric in gedanken saz:
very sad in thoughts sat:

sîn leben er in herzen maz
his life he in heart measured

und bedâchte sîne nôt
and pondered his distress

umb ietweder Îsôt,
for each Isolde,

von Irlande umb die bêle
of Ireland for the fair-one

und umb die von Arundêle.
and for the-one of Arundel.

Isôt die maget von Karke,
Isolde the maiden of Karke,

die was im alsô starke
she was to-him so strongly

gevallen in sîn herze;
fallen into his heart;

iedoch twanc in der smerze
yet forced him the pain

der rechten herzenliebe gnuoc,
of-the true heart's-love enough,

die er zu Isôten truoc,
which he to Isolde bore,

der blunden bêlen ûz Irlant.
the blonde fair-one from Ireland.

und er zwivalter liebe enpfant,
and he twofold love felt,

des nam in selber wunder
of-that took him self wonder

und wunderte in besunder,
and wondered him apart,

daz er leit herzelîche nôt
that he suffered heartfelt distress

umb ietweder Îsôt.
for each Isolde.

der wol besinnete Tristan
the well minded Tristan

in sînem sinne er sich versan
in his mind he himself bethought

und gedâchte: „ez enmac nicht sîn,
and thought: „it may not be,

daz ich in dem herzen mîn
that I in the heart my

müge zwei herzenliep getragen.
may two heart's-loves carry.

wan ich hân oft gehœret sagen:
for I have often heard say:

„swer mêr liep hât dan einez,
„whoever more love has than one,

dern hât nindert keinez;
he has nowhere any;

swer mit zwein lieben liebe pflicht
whoever with two loves love plights

hât, dern treit herzenliebe nicht."
has, he bears heart's-love not."

Alsus gedâchte Tristân:
Thus thought Tristan:

„sol ich nicht herzeliebe hân,
„shall I not heart's-love have,

des wundert inneclîchen mich.
of-that wonders inwardly me.

ei, hêrre got, und wie bin ich
ah, lord God, and how am I

sô wunderlîch gescheiden
so wondrously divided

von den Isôten beiden!
from the Isoldes both!

und trage sie doch in herzen
and carry them yet in heart

mit rechtem herzensmerzen;
with true heart's-pain;

ietweder mir in herzen liget,
each to-me in heart lies,

ietweder hât an mir gesiget.
each has on me conquered.

und ist daz herzenliebe nicht,
and (if)-is that heart's-love not,

als daz sprichwort dâ spricht,
as the proverb there speaks,

daz ich sie beide minne
that I them both love

mit herzen und mit sinne,
with heart and with mind,

sô muoz ich eine Isôte lân
so must I one Isolde leave

und eine Isôt zu vrouwen hân.
and one Isolde as lady have.

ei, wenne geschiet daz oder wie?
ah, when happens that or how?

nu minne ich dort und meine hie,
now love I there and mean here,

ich minne hie und meine dort.
I love here and mean there.

Îsôt, mîner vröuden hort —
Isolde, my joys' hoard—

ich meine dich blunden ûz Irlant —
I mean thee blonde-one from Ireland—

mir ist dîn triuwe wol erkant.
to-me is thy faithfulness well known.

sol ich dich ûz dem herzen lân,
(if)-shall I thee out-of the heart let,

sô werde ich triuwelôs ein man."
so become I faithless a man."

alsô saz er gedenkende
so sat he thinking

und mit gedanken wenkende.
and with thoughts wavering.

er gedâchte ouch ie genôte
he thought also ever eagerly

an sîn ander Isôte,
of his other Isolde,

die schœne wîzgehande,
the fair white-handed,

nicht an die ûz Irlande.
not of the-one from Ireland.

„Ei", gedâchte er, „schœne Isôt",
„Ah", thought he, „fair Isolde",

ich weiz wol, daz dîn herze nôt
I know well, that thy heart distress

durch mîne minne lîdet;
for my love suffers;

ob dich mîn lîp vermîdet
if thee my self avoids

und dîn zu vrouwen enpir,
and of-thee as lady forgoes,

sô werde ich triuwelôs an dir.
so become I faithless to thee.

dîn vater und dîn muoter,
thy father and thy mother,
mîn vriunt trût unde guoter
my friend dear and good
und mîn geselle Kâedîn,
and my companion Kaedin,
die müezen es betrüebet sîn,
they must of-it saddened be,
ob ich nicht bî dir blîbe
if I not with thee remain
und dich nicht neme zu wîbe."
and thee not take as wife."
diz was ein wunderlîch geschicht:
this was a wondrous happening:
er wolde ir beider haben nicht
he would of-them both have not
und wolde ir eine doch nicht lân.
and would of-them one yet not leave.
„ei, verirreter Tristân,"
„ah, strayed Tristan,"
gedâchte er selbe wider sich,
thought he self against himself,
„wer bin ich oder waz vüeret mich?
„who am I or what leads me?
wâ bin ich oder wâ sol ich hin,
where am I or where shall I hence,
sint ich alsus verirret bin
since I thus strayed am
under disen Isôten zwein?"
among these Isoldes two?"
innerdes wart er inein,
meanwhile became he resolved,

daz er aber wanken
that he again waver

begonde mit gedanken.
began with thoughts.

Er gedâchte aber hin
He thought again away

an sînes herzen künigin,
of his heart's queen,

an die bêle blunde Isôt.
of the fair blonde Isolde.

sîn wîsheit riet im und gebôt,
his wisdom counseled him and commanded,

daz er in herzen achte
that he in heart should-heed

und achtende betrachte
and heeding should-consider

alle sîne vuore und alle sîn leben.
all his conduct and all his life.

er gedâchte: „ez enlît nicht eben
he thought: „it lies not even

und kumt von krankem sinne,
and comes from weak mind,

daz dû die küniginne,
that thou the queen,

dînes ôhems êlich wîp,
thy uncle's wedded wife,

hâst liep vor aller wîbe lîp.
hast dear before all women's person.

du sündest sêre wider got:
thou sinnest sorely against God:

der tiuvel der hât sînen spot
the devil he has his mockery

mit dir getriben alzu vil.
with thee driven all-too much.

von Isôten ich wil
from Isolde I will

mich mitalle ziehen
myself altogether withdraw

und ir minne vliehen,
and her love flee,

ê daz reine süeze wîp
before that pure sweet woman

durch mich verliese iren lîp.“
for me should-lose her life.“

daz was doch sêre wider sîn art
that was yet sorely against its nature

des trankes, der getrunken wart
of-the drink, which drunk was

ûz dem glase von in,
out-of the glass by them,

von Tristan und der künigin:
by Tristan and the queen:

ez was ein michel wunder
it was a great wonder

und wundert mich besunder,
and wonders me apart,

daz er die küniginne vlôch
that he the queen fled

und sich von ir minne zôch.
and himself from her love drew.

Doch merke ez, swer dâ sinnic sî,
Yet mark it, whoever there thoughtful be,

daz uns vorjehent astrôlogî,
that us declares astrology,

die meister, die dâ kunnen sehen
the masters, who there can see

und an dem gestirne spehen
and in the stars espy

ir natûre und alle ir art,
their nature and all their kind,

ir louf, ir spêre, ir durchvart,
their course, their sphere, their passage,

ir kelde, ir hitze, ir trucken, ir naz:
their cold, their heat, their dry, their wet:

die jehent, daz underwîlen daz
they declare, that at-times that

an sunnen und an mânen geschicht,
to sun and to moon happens,

daz in verlischet ir licht
that to-them goes-out their light

und werden vinster als die nacht.
and become dark as the night.

sinnic man und wol bedâcht
thoughtful man and well considered

diz meinen rechte vornim:
this meaning rightly perceive:

man nennet iz eclypsim.
one names it eclipsim.

eclypsis, als ich spreche,
eclipsis, as I speak,

daz heizet ein gebreche.
that means a failing.

wan den planêten daz geschicht,
for to-the planets that happens,

daz in irs schînes gebricht;
that to-them of-their shining fails;

sint sunne und mâne iren schîn
since sun and moon their shining

(die des gestirnes vürsten sîn)
(who of-the stars princes are)

245 understunt vorliesen,
at-times lose,

sô muge wir daz ouch kiesen,
so may we that also perceive,

daz die andern himelstern
that the other heaven-stars

underwîlen ouch enpern
at-times also forgo

irs glastes und irs schînes.
their brightness and their shining.

250 der sun Rîwalînes,
the son of-Riwalin,

der sorgenrîche Tristân,
the care-rich Tristan,

der mochte ouch einen stern hân
he might also a star have

mit der künigîn gemein,
with the queen in-common,

der im nu nicht als ê erschein
which to-him now not as before appeared

255 und ir beider minne pflac,
and of-their both love took-care,

an dem die kraft des trankes lac
in which the power of-the drink lay

und genatûret nâch im was,
and natured after it was,

den sie dâ trunken ûz dem glas.
which they there drank out-of the glass.

diz merke, swer ie sinnic wart:
this mark, whoever ever thoughtful became:

ichn mac dem tranke nicht sîn art
I may to-the drink not its nature

abe gereden noch enkan
away talk nor can

wan mit der rede, die getân
except with the speech, which made

ist von dem gestirne hie.
is about the stars here.

swer nu baz beredet sie,
whoever now better talks-of them,

der künste wirde ich im wol gan.
the art's worth I to-him well grant.

doch wizzet, daz er Tristan
yet know, that sir Tristan

sînen muot und sînen sin
his spirit and his mind

zôch vaste von der künigin;
drew hard from the queen;

wan er bedâchte starke,
for he pondered strongly,

daz der künic Marke
that the king Mark

sîner muoter bruoder was.
his mother's brother was.

und als er in sîn herze las
and as he into his heart read

und die sünde geachte
and the sin heeded

und daz unrecht betrachte
and the wrong considered

und ouch der êren ungewin,
and also of-the honor loss,

dô liez er die künigin,
then let he the queen,

ir lîp, ir leben, ir minne
her person, her life, her love

ûz sînes herzen sinne
out-of his heart's mind

und was im ein gemeiner lîp
and was to-him a common person

doch lieber wan ein ander wîp.
yet dearer than an other woman.

Ei, blunde künigîn Isôt,
Ah, blonde queen Isolde,

ir lebet im noch und ist er tôt
you live to-him still and (if)-is he dead

iuch bî lebendigem leben,
to-you with living life,

dem iuwer minne hât gegeben
to-whom your love has given

ofte rîcher vröuden vil!
often of-rich joys much!

mit urloube ich daz sprechen wil:
with leave I that say will:

und westet irz, daz er Tristân
and knew you-it, that he Tristan

iuch ûz dem herzen hât gelân,
you out-of the heart has let,

ir wentet iuwer gemüete
you turned your mind

mit wîplîcher güete
with womanly goodness

an den künic iuweren man
to the king your husband

und nicht an ern Tristan.
and not to sir Tristan.

waz rede ich oder wâ wil ich hin?
what speak I or where will I hence?

waz weiz ich, ob der künigin
what know I, whether to-the queen

ouch der stern erloschen was
also the star gone-out was

der minne, dâ von ich ê las,
of love, there of I before read,

und ob der minnetranc sîn art
and whether the love-drink its nature

gein ir als gein im het verkârt,
toward her as toward him had turned,

sô daz die küniginne
so that the queen

ir meine und ir minne
her mind and her love

wante an irn êlîchen man
turned to her wedded husband

und nicht an hern Tristan?
and not to sir Tristan?

swie dem nu sî, daz lâze wir varn.
however with-it now be, that let we go.

Tristan, Rîwalînes barn,
Tristan, Riwalin's child,

der bedâchte vürbaz
he pondered further

in sînem herzen diz und daz
in his heart this and that

um die wîzgehande Isôt,
about the white-handed Isolde,

diez im sô minneclîch erbôt
who-it to-him so lovingly offered

offenbâr und tougen
openly and secretly

mit herzen und mit ougen,
with heart and with eyes,

mit rede und mit gebêrden.
with speech and with bearing.

Blanschemanîs die werden
Blanschemanis the worthy

gar lieplîch er in herzen truoc
very lovingly he in heart bore

mit rechter herzenliebe gnuoc,
with true heart's-love enough,

als er ez wol erscheinete;
as he it well showed;

er minnete unde meinete
he loved and cherished

von herzen die vil schœne maget.
from heart the very fair maiden.

ouch ist ez, als daz sprichwort saget:
also is it, as the proverb says:

vremde scheidet herzenliep,
strangeness parts heart's-love,

sô machet state manchen diep.
so makes occasion many-a thief.

durch vremde er jene Isôten vlôch,
through strangeness he that Isolde fled,

zu diser er durch state zôch;
to this-one he through opportunity drew;

durch vremde er jene Isôten meit,
through strangeness he that Isolde shunned,

durch state er diser was bereit
through opportunity he to-this-one was ready

mit dienstlîchen dingen.
with serviceable things.

Und in begonde twingen
And him began force

die minne vaste unde gnuoc,
the love hard and enough,

die er zu der magde truoc,
which he to the maiden bore,

er gedâchte an Kâedînen,
he thought of Kaedin,

den gesellen sînen,
the companion his,

und sante nâch im sâ zuhant.
and sent for him straightway at-once.

nu Kâedîn was besant
now Kaedin was summoned

und er zu Tristande quam,
and he to Tristan came,

Tristan in heimelîchen nam
Tristan him secretly took

und leite im sîne willekür
and laid to-him his will

und sînes herzen willen vür.
and his heart's wish before.

ûz innenclîchem herzen sprach
out-of heartfelt heart spoke

Tristan, des wortes er verjach:
Tristan, of-the word he declared:

„ei, süezer vriunt Lîfrenîs,
„ah, sweet friend Lifrenis,

lâz dînen vürstlîchen prîs
let thy princely prize

an mir enlenden werden schîn!"
on me exiled become visible!"

„waz meines dû?" sprach Kâedîn,
„what meanest thou?" spoke Kaedin,

„vriunt lieber, oder waz wirret dir?"
„friend dear, or what troubles thee?"

alsiufzende ûz sîns herzen gir
sighing out-of his heart's longing
antwurte im er Tristan,
answered him sir Tristan,
er jach: „ichn mac noch enkan
he declared: „I-not may nor can
gewenden mîne sinne
turn my senses
von dîner swester minne.
from thy sister's love.
Blanschemanîs die schœne Isôt,
Blanschemanis the fair Isolde,
die tuot mir endelîch den tôt,
she does to-me finally the death,
ob sie nicht wirt zu vrouwen mir.
if she not becomes as lady to-me.
nu liget al mîn trôst an dir;
now lies all my comfort on thee;
rât, lieber vriunt gehiure,
counsel, dear friend gentle,
und gip mir râtes stiure,
and give me counsel's help,
wie sie mir werde zu wîbe
how she to-me become as wife
und ich hie bî ir blîbe."
and I here with her remain."
Kâedîn der sach in an:
Kaedin he looked him at:
„und meinet irz, er Tristan?"
„and mean you-it, sir Tristan?"
sprach der süeze Lîfrenîs.
spoke the sweet Lifrenis.

Tristan sprach: „ritterlîchen prîs
Tristan spoke: „knightly prize

den muoz ich nimmermê bejagen,
it must I nevermore win,

ob ich dir unrecht welle sagen:
if I to-thee wrong would say:

ich minne dîner swester lîp
I love thy sister's person

vür alle megde und alle wîp."
before all maidens and all women."

II · THE WEDDING AT KARKE

Kaedin wins his parents' consent, and Isolde of the White Hands gladly agrees. Tristan swears on the relics to take her as wife. At Pentecost the duke holds a great wedding feast with dancing, a bishop gives the couple to each other with rings, and the bride is brought to Tristan's bed by her mother and the ladies.

Nu was der süeze Lîfrenîs
Now was the sweet Lifrenis

verstendic, sinnic unde wîs.
understanding, thoughtful and wise.

und er Tristandes ernst ersach,
when he Tristan's earnest saw,

gar sinneclîchen er jach:
very thoughtfully he declared:

„vriunt lieber und geselle mîn,
„friend dear and companion my,

mîn rât der sol dir nütze sîn.
my counsel it shall to-thee useful be.

ich lege dînes herzen kür
I lay thy heart's choice

mînem vater gerne vür
to-my father gladly before

und darzu mîner muoter;
and thereto to-my mother;

ouch wirt mîn rât dir guoter
also becomes my counsel to-thee good

gein mîner swester; wizze, daz
toward my sister; know, that

sie dir ouch nicht enist gehaz,
she to-thee also not is hateful,

des hân ich ê vorstanden mich."
of-that have I before understood myself."

hie mite schieden sie sich.
here with parted they themselves.

Kâedîn von herzen vrô
Kaedin from heart glad

der mêre was und kêrte dô
of-the tidings was and turned then

von Tristande sâ zuhant,
from Tristan straightway at-once,

aldâ er sînen vater vant
to-where he his father found

und sîne muoter bî einander.
and his mother beside each-other.

Isôte sîne swester vander
Isolde his sister found-he

mit züchten bî in sitzen.
with breeding beside them sit.

lachende und mit witzen
laughing and with wits

sprach er der schœnen maget zu:
spoke he to-the fair maiden to:

„Isôt, mîn swester, sitze du
„Isolde, my sister, sit thou

von uns ein wêninc hin dan!
from us a little away thence!

mit mînem vater ich hân
with my father I have

zu reden heimelîche dinc.
to speak secret thing.

vrouwe muoter“, sprach der jungelinc,
lady mother“, spoke the youth,

„nu neiget iuwer ôre her!“
„now incline your ear hither!“

mit diser rede kniete ouch er
with this speech knelt also he

vür vater und vür muoter.
before father and before mother.

sîn muot vruot unde guoter
his spirit wise and good

und sîne zucht im daz gebôt.
and his breeding him that commanded.

er jach: „vater, unser nôt
he declared: „father, our distress

die wil mit vröuden enden sich.
it will with joys end itself.

mîn vriunt, er Tristan, der hât mich
my friend, sir Tristan, he has me

her gesendet zu iuch zwein
hither sent to you two

und ist worden des inein,
and is become of-that resolved,

mac er an iuch gnâde vinden,
(if)-may he with you grace find,

daz er sich wil underwinden
that he himself will undertake
der swester mîn zu wîbe;
the sister my as wife;
und daz er bî uns blîbe,
and that he with us remain,
des begert er inneclîch.“
that desires he heartily.“
der mêre von herzen vrouten sich
of-the tidings from heart rejoiced themselves
der herzoge und die herzogîn.
the duke and the duchess.
„mîn lieber sun Kâedîn,
„my dear son Kaedin,
verstendic unde vruoter,“
understanding and wise,“
sprach zu zim sîn muoter,
spoke to him his mother,
„wenne ist die rede geschehen
„when is the speech happened
oder wâ hât er dir verjehen
or where has he to-thee declared
der lieben mêre, die du sages?“
the dear tidings, which thou sayest?“
her jach: „hiute dises tages
he declared: „today of-this day
tet er mir sie wêrlich kunt.
made he to-me them truly known.
ich gê von im an dirre stunt
I go from him at this hour
und werbe, als er mich werben bat,
and woo, as he me to-woo bade,

und râte ez ouch: sint daz er hât
and counsel it also: since that he has

gewendet sîne sinne
turned his senses

an mîner swester minne,
to my sister's love,

sô sul wir sînem lîbe
so shall we to-his person

geben sie zu wîbe;
give her as wife;

und wizzet, daz unser sêlikeit
and know, that our blessedness

wirt von im lanc, wît unde breit."
becomes from him long, wide and broad."

Der herzoge und die herzogîn
The duke and the duchess

und ir sun Kâedîn,
and their son Kaedin,

Lîfrenîs der jungelinc,
Lifrenis the youth,

um dise sêliclîchen dinc
about these blessed things

machten kurz iren rât:
made short their counsel:

swes man sich vor betrachtet hât
whatever one oneself before considered has

und von herzen hât begert,
and from heart has desired,

des râtes rede nicht lange wert.
of-that counsel's speech not long lasts.

alsô geschach in ouch alhie.
so happened to-them also here.

vil schiere sich berieten sie
very quickly themselves counseled they

und wurden des zu râte
and became of-that to counsel

in ir herzen drâte:
in their heart quickly:

sie wolden Tristande
they would to-Tristan

geben die wîzgehande.
give the white-handed.

waz sol diser rede mê?
what shall this speech more?

des sie gewünschet hêten ê,
what they wished had before,

des wurden sie gebeten nu.
of-that were they asked now.

sie sprâchen Îsôten zu,
they spoke to-Isolde to,

der kiuschen und der wîsen,
the chaste and the wise,

der maget Blanschemanîsen.
the maiden Blanschemanis.

die reine, valsches vrîe
the pure, of-falsehood free

ir muoter vrou Karsîe
her mother lady Karsie

hiez lieplîch zu ir sitzen
bade lovingly to her sit

und leite ir vür mit witzen
and laid to-her before with wits

Tristandes willen und sînen sin.
Tristan's will and his mind.

Karsîe die guote herzogin
Karsie the good duchess

vrâgete sie der mêre,
asked her of-the tidings,

ob ez ir wille wêre,
whether it her will were,

daz sie hêrren Tristan
that she lord Tristan

wolde nemen zu man.
would take as husband.

Blanschemanîs die schœne Isôt
Blanschemanis the fair Isolde

gar megetlîche rede bôt
very maidenly speech offered

irem vater und ir muoter:
to-her father and to-her mother:

„swaz iuwer wille guoter
„whatever your will good

ist unde Kâedînes,
is and Kaedin's,

des lieben bruoder mînes,
the dear brother my,

daz ist ouch wol der wille mîn,
that is also well the will my,

solde ich sîn halt betrüebet sîn."
should I of-it even saddened be."

betrüebet? sprach ich alsô?
saddened? spoke I so?

nein, zwâr sie was von herzen vrô
no, truly she was from heart glad

des lieben tages, der lieben zît
of-the dear day, of-the dear time

und wuochs ir vröude in widerstrît
and grew her joy in rivalry

in herzen und in sinne,
in heart and in mind,
wan sie meine und minne
for she affection and love
hête an in einen gewant.
had on him alone turned.
nu wart er Tristan besant.
now was sir Tristan summoned.
Lîfrenîs Kâedîn
Lifrenis Kaedin
der gienc nâch dem gesellen sîn;
he went for the companion his;
an sîner hende sunder haz
at his hand without hatred
vuorte er in, dâ sîn vater saz,
led he him, where his father sat,
sîn muoter und die schœne Isôt;
his mother and the fair Isolde;
ietwederz im die wirde erbôt,
each to-him the honor offered,
daz sie gein im giengen
that they toward him went
und in schône enpfiengen.
and him beautifully received.
Die herzogîn Karsîe,
The duchess Karsie,
die kiusche, wandels vrîe,
the chaste, of-blemish free,

nam ern Tristanden
took sir Tristan

mit iren wîzen handen
with her white hands

und satzte in an ir sîten
and set him at her side

und vrâgete in in den zîten,
and asked him at the time,

ob ez wêre der wille sîn
whether it were the will his

um die sache, als Kâedîn
about the matter, as Kaedin

hête geworben wider sie.
had wooed toward them.

„genâde, vrouwe, mirn wart nie
„mercy, lady, to-me became never

mîn sin, mîn herze und mîn muot
my mind, my heart and my spirit

zu keinen dingen nie sô guot."
to any things ever so good."

sus antwurte ir er Tristân.
thus answered her sir Tristan.

der herzoge Lovelîn sprach sân
the duke Jovelin spoke then

ûz inneclîches herzen grunt:
out-of heartfelt heart's ground:

„nu sult ir hunderttûsent stunt
„now shall you hundred-thousand times

gote und mir willekome sîn,
to-God and to-me welcome be,

sun und lieber eidem mîn.
son and dear son-in-law my.

iuch sol wesen undertân
to-you shall be subject
lant und liute und swaz ich hân.“
land and people and whatever I have.“
waz sol ich lange hie von sagen?
what shall I long here of say?
daz heilictuom wart dar getragen
the relics was thither carried
und wart Tristande vür gehabet
and was to-Tristan before held
und wart im der eit gestabet.
and was to-him the oath dictated.
nû swuor ouch her Tristân,
now swore also sir Tristan,
daz er wolde Isôten hân
that he would Isolde have
und nemen sînem lîbe
and take to-his person
zu eime êlîchen wîbe.
as a wedded wife.
Darnâch über vier wochen
Thereafter over four weeks
beruofen und besprochen,
called and spoken-for,
bekrîet schône und beschrît
proclaimed beautifully and cried
wart des vürsten hôchgezît
was the prince's high-feast
rechte ûf die zît zu pfingesten.
right at the time at Pentecost.

die swêresten und die ringesten
the heaviest and the lightest

in des herzogen lant
in the duke's land

die wurden alle besant:
they were all summoned:

barûne und lanthêrren,
barons and land-lords,

die minneren und die mêrren,
the lesser and the greater,

beide ritter unde knechte;
both knights and squires;

gezieret wol nâch sînem rechte
adorned well after his right

solde ie der man zu hove kumen.
should ever the man to court come.

nû die botschaft wart vernumen
now the embassy was heard

in dem lande über al
in the land over all

und der süeze ruof erschal
and the sweet cry resounded

von dem edelen Tristande,
of the noble Tristan,

daz er die maget die wîzgehande
that he the maiden the white-handed

nû zu vrouwen solde hân,
now as lady should have,

des wart im heiles wunsch getân
of-that was to-him fortune's wish done

von manger edelen zungen.
by many-a noble tongue.

die alden und die jungen,
the old and the young,

rîch und arm wâren dô
rich and poor were then

sîn gemeineclîchen vrô.
of-him commonly glad.

Waz nû der herzoge tu?
What now the duke does?

er liez ôt vaste vüeren zu,
he let just hard bring to,

beide trîben unde tragen
both drive and carry

in schiffen und ûf mangen wagen
in ships and on many-a wagon

die beste spîse, den besten wîn,
the best food, the best wine,

swaz ôt guotes mochte sîn
whatever just good might be

aldâ in sînem lande
there in his land

und swaz er rechte erkande,
and whatever he rightly knew,

daz in gewirden mochte
that him honor might

und im zu nutze tochte
and to-him for use availed

zu sîner tochter hôchzît.
for his daughter's high-feast.

ouch zierten sich in widerstrît
also adorned themselves in rivalry

die hêrren von dem lande
the lords of the land

mit rîchlîchem gewande
with rich garments

und mit aller zierheit.
and with all ornament.

rîche wât und rîche cleit
rich clothing and rich garment

wart in nâch hêrlîchen siten
was to-them after lordly manners

gein der hôchzît gesniten.
toward the high-feast cut.

dô nû die zît wunnesam
when now the time delightful

und der benante tac quam,
and the named day came,

als die hôchzît was geleit,
as the high-feast was laid,

vil mange stôrie zu reit
very many-a troop thither rode

von rittern und von vrouwen.
of knights and of ladies.

man mochte wunder schouwen
one might wonder behold

an manger ritterlîchen schar
in many-a knightly company

und an manger vrouwen clâr,
and in many-a lady bright,

die dâ gefeigetieret,
who there adorned,

schône und wol gezieret
beautifully and well decked

brâchten engelischen schîn
brought angelic shining

aldâ zu Karke mit in în.
there at Karke with them in.

Dô mit den gesten, als ich las,
When with the guests, as I read,

hûs und stat gevüllet was
house and town filled was

und man herberge in gewan,
and one lodging for-them gained,

daz man ir nimmer mochte hân,
that one of-them no-more might have,

dô sluoc man hütten und gezelt
then struck one huts and tents

alum die stat ûf daz velt
all-around the town on the field

von pfelle und ouch von sîden.
of brocade and also of silks.

ein vrœlîch herze lîden
a joyful heart suffer

wol mochte sunder leide
well might without sorrow

dise vrœlîch ougelweide.
this joyful eye-feast.

swer ûf dem hûse oder in der stat
whoever on the house or in the town

durch schouwen an die zinnen trat
for viewing to the battlements stepped

und ougelweide wolde spehen,
and eye-feast would espy,

der muoste in sînem herzen jehen
he must in his heart declare

daz er sêhe in alle wîs
that he should-see in all ways

hin in der vröuden paradîs.
thither into the joys' paradise.

nu nâhete iz der vesperzît:
now neared it the vesper-time:

„holâ vuoter!“ wart geschrît,
„hola fodder!“ was cried,

„zu dem hove des hêrren mîn,
„to the court of-the lord my,

des herzogen Lovelîn,
the duke Jovelin,

des vürsten von Arundelê!“
the prince of Arundel!“

dise krîe er ofte schrê
this cry he often cried

ein knappe, wen er konde ez wol:
a squire, for he could it well:

„holâ vuoter, holâ, hol!
„hola fodder, hola, hol!

holâ vuoter, holâ vuoter!“
hola fodder, hola fodder!“

dar nâch ein knappe vruoter
there after a squire wise

rief lûte und nicht lîse:
called loud and not softly:

„holâ, holâ küchenspîse!“
„hola, hola kitchen-food!“

sô rief aber einer: „holâ tranc!“
so called again one: „hola drink!“

swer sich ôt dâ zu hove dranc,
whoever himself just there at court pressed,

dem gap man alles des zu vil,
to-him gave one of-all that too much,

des ein herze wünschen wil
which a heart wish will

von ezzen und von trinken.
of eating and of drinking.

die sunne begonde sinken,
the sun began sink,

die zît sie mit ir brâchte,
the time it with it brought,

dâ bî man wol gedâchte,
there by one well thought,

ob mans bedenken wolde,
if one-it consider would,

daz man zu âbent ezzen solde.
that one at evening eat should.

Nu wart ouch dâ gesûmit nicht:
Now was also there delayed nothing:

die tische wurden gericht,
the tables were prepared,

tuoch und brôt dar ûf geleit.
cloth and bread there on laid.

nu was daz wazzer bereit;
now was the water ready;

Isôt die maget des êrsten
Isolde the maiden of-the first

mit juncvrouwen den hêrsten
with young-ladies the highest

in züchten wazzer dâ nam,
in breeding water there took,

dar nâch manch vrouwe wunnesam.
there after many-a lady delightful.

die vürsten wazzer nâmen,
the princes water took,

vil hêrren dar zu quâmen
many lords there to came

und manch ritter wunnenclîch,
and many-a knight delightful,

die nâmen wazzer und satzten sich.
they took water and set themselves.

mit züchten man in vür truoc
with breeding one to-them before bore

wol bereiter spîse gnuoc.
well prepared food enough.

und schancte in ûz erwelten wîn
and poured them out chosen wine

in trincvazzen guldîn.
in drinking-vessels golden.

waz hilfet, ob ichz machte lanc?
what helps, if I-it made long?

dô man nu gaz und getranc
when one now ate and drank

und man die tische danne truoc,
and one the tables then bore,

Karsîe sinnic unde kluoc
Karsie thoughtful and clever

hiez die videlêre
bade the fiddlers

ûf strîchen wunnebêre
up stroke delightful

und hiez sie machen einen tanz.
and bade them make a dance.

daz geschach: manch rîchlîch swanz
that happened: many-a rich swirl

von schœnen vrouwen wart gesehn
of fair ladies was seen

an dem tanze, hôrte ich jehn.
at the dance, heard I declare.

der hôchgemuote Tristant
the high-spirited Tristan

nam Isôten an die hant
took Isolde by the hand

und vuorte zu dem tanze sie.
and led to the dance her.

vil hêrren, rittere, jene und die,
many lords, knights, that-one and this-one,

alte züchteclîch und jungen,
old with-breeding and young,

gemeine zu dem tanze drungen.
together to the dance pressed.

Dô sie nu vrœlîch tanzten,
When they now joyfully danced,

in vröuden umbe swanzten,
in joys around swirled,

inredes ein bischof quam
meanwhile a bishop came

in den tanz, als ich vernam.
into the dance, as I heard.

sîn ornât mit zierheit
his vestment with ornament

hête er schône an sich geleit.
had he beautifully on himself laid.

der herzoge Lovelîn
the duke Jovelin

und sîn sun Kâedîn
and his son Kaedin

die nâmen die maget Isôten,
they took the maiden Isolde,

an sorgen gar die tôten,
in cares wholly the dead,

unde vuortens in den rinc.
and led-her into the ring.

der hôchgemuote jungelinc,
the high-spirited youth,

von Parmenîe Tristân,
of Parmenie Tristan,

der muoste gein der magde stân.
he must opposite the maiden stand.

waz sol ich hie von sprechen mê?
what shall I here of speak more?

der bischof im zu rechter ê
the bishop him in rightful marriage

gap Isôten die maget
gave Isolde the maiden

und gab in ir, als diz buoch saget;
and gave him to-her, as this book says;

und wart diz zwischen in beiden
and was this between them both

mit triuwen und mit eiden
with faithfulness and with oaths

bestêtet, als iz solde sîn:
confirmed, as it should be:

er gab ir sîn vingerlîn
he gave her his ring

und sie im daz ire wider.
and she him the hers back.

hie mit gesâzen sie nider;
here with sat they down;

vil kerzen wurden ûf gezunt,
many candles were up kindled,

man brâchte in trinken sâ zustunt.
one brought them drink straightway at-once.

dô sie getrunken, dô hiez man
when they drunk, then bade one

Tristâne sâ zu bette gân.
Tristan straightway to bed go.

her Tristan gienc zu bette,
sir Tristan went to bed,

vil schiere er sich enpfette
very quickly he himself undressed

und leite in grôzen vröuden sich.
and laid in great joys himself.

Isôt die maget wunnenclich
Isolde the maiden delightful
die wart gevüeret im aldar
she was led to-him thither
von der vrouwelîchen schar.
by the womanly company.
ir muoter Karsîe,
her mother Karsie,
die reine, valsches vrîe,
the pure, of-falsehood free,
die hôchgemuote herzogîn,
the high-spirited duchess,
Tristanden an den armen sîn
to-Tristan in the arms his
ir liebe tochter leite;
her dear daughter laid;
der magde sie dô seite
to-the maiden she then said
und dem hôchgemuoten degen
and to-the high-spirited warrior
mit worten mangen süezen segen.
with words many-a sweet blessing.
die kiuschen und die clâren
the chaste and the bright
vrouwen, die dâ wâren
ladies, who there were
mit ir in der kemenâten,
with her in the chamber,
iren segen ouch dô tâten
their blessing also then did
über sie und giengen hin vür.
over them and went away out.
Karsîe die tet zu die tür.
Karsie she did to the door.

Tristan stuont ûf unde slôz
Tristan stood up and locked

dâ vür ouch einen rigel grôz.
there before also a bolt great.

III · THE RING

Isolde wraps herself tight to guard her maidenhood, then yields to Tristan's approach. But the ring the queen gave him when they parted reminds him of the first Isolde, who storms into his heart, and he lies beside his bride as if dead. She wonders whether she is too young, too old, or misshapen, and decides it must be a custom of his country. Next morning she goes to mass a bride in name and a maiden still. At the feast Tristan thinks of the other Isolde while his bride grieves that he left her untouched, and at the tourney after it no knight pleases her more than he does.

Die wîle daz her Tristan
The while that sir Tristan

die türe sliezen began,
the door to-lock began,

sô lac sîns herzen vrouwe dort,
so lay his heart's lady there,

sîner niuwen vröuden hort,
his new joys' hoard,

Blanschemanîs die schœne Isôt,
Blanschemanis the fair Isolde,

und besorgete ire nôt
and worried-about her distress

umb ir megetlîchen ruom
for her maidenly glory

und um ir blüenden magettuom.
and for her blooming maidenhood.

zwô kerzen ob ir brunnen:
two candles above her burned:

Isôt die maget der sunnen
Isolde the maiden to-the sun

was mit ir schœne nâhen glîch.
was with her beauty near equal.

sie lac dort harte megetlîch
she lay there very maidenly

und was gedanken nicht ein gast.
and was of-thoughts not a guest.

nu gap der kerzen widerglast
now gave the candles' reflection

ir hermelwîze scheitel.
her ermine-white parting.

Îsôt nam ir pfeitel,
Isolde took her shift,

ir wîzen bein die linden
her white legs the soft

begonde sie dar în winden.
began she there into wind.

sie want und war sich vaste dar în;
she wound and wrapped herself hard there in;

sie wolde daz blüende blüemelîn
she would the blooming little-flower

irs blüenden magettuomes wern,
of-her blooming maidenhood defend,

eine wîle vor Tristande nern.
a while before Tristan save.

ir beide diech, ir beide knie
her both thighs, her both knees

an ir biuchel dructe sie
to her little-belly pressed she

vaste und minnenclîchen zwâr.
hard and lovingly truly.

sie hête irs magettuomes vâr;
she had of-her maidenhood fear;

die schœne maget Blanschemanîs
the fair maiden Blanschemanis

ir blanken arme criuzewîs
her white arms crosswise

vaste über einander schrenkete,
hard over each-other crossed,

gein herzen sie die lenkete
toward heart she them turned

und dructe sie ûf ir brustel.
and pressed them on her little-breast.

sie dâchte: „ob ein gelustel
she thought: „if a little-lust

von herzen Tristande gât,
from heart to-Tristan goes,

daz er dich minnenclîch bestât,
that he thee lovingly assails,

sô vindet er dich doch bî wer.
so finds he thee yet with defense.

ob ich mich eine wîle ner
if I myself a while save

vor im durch megetlîchen prîs,
before him for maidenly prize,

der junge süeze Parmenîs
the young sweet Parmenian

her nâch mich habet deste baz."
here after me holds the better."

ei, wie wol bedâchte daz
ah, how well considered that

der minne ein menschlîch nœzel!
of love a human little-comrade!

sie lac an einem clœzel
she lay in a little-lump

zu samne gedrücket
to together pressed

und minneclîch gesmücket
and lovingly nestled

in megetlîchem ruome.
in maidenly glory.

sie hête ir magettuome
she had for-her maidenhood

gebûwet eine vesten
built a fortress

ûz geziuge dem besten,
out-of material the best,

als ir muoter hête erzogen,
as her mother had raised,

ûz armen und ûz ellenbogen,
out-of arms and out-of elbows,

ûz henden und ûz beinen;
out-of hands and out-of legs;

ir vesten dach, der reinen,
her fortress's roof, of-the pure-one,

daz was ein hemde sîdîn,
that was a shift silken,

dâ het sie sich geprîsit în
there had she herself laced in

und vornêt sô minnenclich,
and sewn so lovingly,

daz sîn noch hiute jâmert mich,
that for-it still today pities me,

daz ez von Tristandes hant
that it by Tristan's hand

nicht wart zurizzen noch zutrant.
not was torn nor ripped.

Her Tristan gienc zu bette wider
Sir Tristan went to bed again

er leite sich bî die maget nider
he laid himself beside the maiden down

und dacte sich lieplîch zu ir.
and covered himself lovingly to her.

sîn herze und al sîns herzen gir,
his heart and all his heart's longing,

sîn wille, sîn sin und al sîn muot
his will, his mind and all his spirit

was im gein der megde guot.
was to-him toward the maiden good.

an sie gar nâhen smucte her sich
to her very near nestled he himself

und begonde gar vriuntlich
and began very friendly

gein der megde gebâren;
toward the maiden behave;

irs magettuomes vâren
of-her maidenhood to-pursue

gar minnenclîch er wolde,
very lovingly he would,

als er zu rechte solde:
as he by right should:

er begonde nâher grîfen,
he began nearer grasp,

den armen liez er slîfen
the arm let he slide

und leite in under ir helselîn.
and laid it under her little-neck.

„jâ", gedâchte Isôt, „ez muoz nu sîn".
„yes", thought Isolde, „it must now be".

sie het sich alles des erwegen,
she had herself of-all that resigned,

des er mit ir wolde pflegen.
which he with her would practice.

ir wille, ir megetlîcher muot
her will, her maidenly spirit

was ouch gein dem manne guot:
was also toward the man good:

minne und lust, die giengen entwer
love and lust, they went across

under in hin unde her.
between them hither and thither.

die maget in sîner minne bran,
the maiden in his love burned,

und in ir minne bran der man.
and in her love burned the man.

er begerte ir, sie begerte sîn.
he desired her, she desired him.

owê! nu hête ein vingerlîn
alas! now had a ring

her Tristan an sîner hant.
sir Tristan on his hand.

dâ bî er etiswes ermant
there by he of-something reminded

wart, dâ von er quam in nôt:
was, there from he came into distress:

swie wol ez im Isôt erbôt,
however well it to-him Isolde offered,

sîn lîp erbibete und erschrac,
his body trembled and took-fright,

sîn herze ersiufzete und er gelac.
his heart sighed and he lay-still.

gelac er? jâ. wer? her Tristan
lay-still he? yes. who? sir Tristan

gelac rechte als ein tôter man.
lay-still right as a dead man.

warumme lac er lebender tôt?
why lay he living dead?

dô quam jene ander Îsôt,
then came that other Isolde,

von Kurnewal die künigîn,
of Cornwall the queen,

die im dâ gap daz vingerlîn,
who to-him there gave the ring,

als ir triuwe daz geriet,
as her faithfulness it counseled,

dô er in triuwen von ir schiet.
when he in faithfulness from her parted.

dort in dem garten daz geschach,
there in the garden that happened,

dô der künic selber sach
when the king himself saw

Tristanden, sun der swester sîn,
Tristan, son of-the sister his,

ligen mit der künigîn.
lie with the queen.

Die selbe blunde bêle Isôt,
The same blonde fair Isolde,

die quam rechte als ein morgenrôt
she came right as a morning-red

und als ein brehender sunnenschîn
and as a shining sunshine

Tristanden in daz herze sîn.
to-Tristan into the heart his.

ir beider vrouwe die Minne,
their both lady the Love,

die vreche stürmerinne,
the bold stormer,

die quam dort her sturmrûschende,
she came there hither storm-rushing,

mit ir vlammen lûschende
with her flames lurking

und mit ir heizem viure
and with her hot fire

und vuorte die gehiure
and led the gentle

Isôt, die blunden ûz Irlant,
Isolde, the blonde-one from Ireland,

durch der kemnâten ganze want
through the chamber's whole wall

und legete sie gar snelle
and laid her very quickly

rechte in die innern zelle,
right into the inner cell,

die in Tristandes herzen was.
which in Tristan's heart was.

dâ nam sie Tristan, als ich las,
there took her Tristan, as I read,

und legete sie lieplîch hin în
and laid her lovingly thither in

in sînes herzen inren schrîn,
into his heart's inner shrine,

aldâ sîn geist sîns lebens pflac.
where his spirit of-his life took-care.

dâ lac sîns herzen ôstertac,
there lay his heart's Easter-day,

Isôt die blunde bêle;
Isolde the blonde fair-one;

und Isôt von Arundêle
and Isolde of Arundel

die lac im an dem armen hie.
she lay to-him in the arm here.

„waz meinet er", gedâchte sie,
„what means he", thought she,

„daz er alsô stille liget
„that he so still lies

und alles des mit dir nicht pfliget,
and of-all that with thee not practices,

des liep mit liebe pflegen sol?
which love with love practice shall?

ich konde im doch geantwurten wol,
I could him yet answer well,

ob in des nicht betrâgete,
if him of-that not wearied,

daz er mich ichtes vrâgete.
that he me anything asked.

nu hân ich disem lieben man
now have I to-this dear man

nie kein ungemach getân.
never any discomfort done.

warumme zürnet er gein mich?
why is-angry he toward me?

ei, hêrre, weder bin ich
ah, lord, whether am I

im zu junc oder zu alt?
to-him too young or too old?

oder bin ich als ungestalt,
or am I so misshapen,

daz er mîn nicht zu wîbe enwil?“
that he me not as wife will?“

der gedanken treip sie vil.
of-the thoughts drove she many.

ob ichz mit loube sprechen tar,
if I-it with leave to-say dare,

sô weste sie wol, waz ir dâ war,
so knew she well, what to-her there harmed,

doch vuor ir meister trôst hie mite,
yet went to-her master comfort here with,

daz sie gedâchte: „ez ist ein site
that she thought: „it is a custom

vil lîchte in Parmenîe,
very likely in Parmenie,

daz man die megde vrîe
that one the maidens free

und kiusche lêt die êrste nacht.
and chaste leaves the first night.

ist sîn durch ein zucht erdâcht,
(if)-is it for a breeding devised,

sô mac ez wol gevüege sîn.
so may it well fitting be.

sie haben dester lichtern schîn,
they have the brighter shining,

swenne sie des morgens ûf stên,
whenever they in-the morning up stand,

von bette zu den liuten gên."
from bed to the people go."

Swie vil sie der gedanken treip,
However much she of-the thoughts drove,

irs magettuoms sie maget bleip.
of-her maidenhood she maiden remained.

ob sie des willen wêre ein brût,
whether she of-that will were a bride,

dâ bedarf man Tristant iren trût
there needs one Tristan her beloved

nicht vil umbe vrâgen zwâr.
not much about-it ask truly.

nu wart ez tac; die sunne clâr
now became it day; the sun bright

durch die venster ûf sie schein.
through the windows on them shone.

Karsîe ir muoter wart inein,
Karsie her mother became resolved,

daz sie mit der vrouwen schar
that she with the ladies' company

quam vür die kemenâten dar.
came before the chamber thither.

sie klopfte züchticlîchen an.
she knocked with-breeding on.

nu stuont ouch ûf her Tristan.
now stood also up sir Tristan.

er leite an die cleider sîn
he put on the clothes his

und liez die vrouwen hin în.
and let the ladies thither in.

Karsîen was ir tochter trût:
to-Karsie was her daughter dear:

sie nam Tristandes wânbrût
she took Tristan's seeming-bride

und legete ir rîche cleider an,
and put on-her rich clothes on,

als sie beste mochte hân,
as she best might have,

und bant sie nâch der briute site
and bound her after the brides' custom

und gab in beiden hie mite,
and gave to-them both here with,

irem eidem Tristanden
to-her son-in-law Tristan

und ouch der wîzgehanden,
and also to-the white-handed,

zu briutelabe stiure
for bridal-refreshment's help

ein petit menschiure.
a little meal.

daz âzen vor dem bette sie.
that ate before the bed they.

dô daz geschach, gein kirchen gie
when that happened, toward church went

die brût vor alle den vrouwen.
the bride before all the ladies.

swer ougelweide schouwen
whoever eye-feast behold

wolde und herzen wunne spehen,
would and heart's bliss espy,

der mochte wunnenclîchen sehen
he might delightfully see

an dirre vrouwelîchen schar
in this womanly company

sîns herzen ougelweide zwâr.
his heart's eye-feast truly.

ouch gienc Isôt, Tristandes trût,
also went Isolde, Tristan's beloved,

die mit dem namen was ein brût
who by the name was a bride

und noch der werke was ein maget,
and still in-the works was a maiden,

als ir benachtet noch betaget
as-if to-her by-night nor by-day

wêre der dinge ichtes icht,
were of-the things anything at-all,

dâ von man brût den briuten spricht.
there from one bride to-the brides calls.

an ir gebêrden nicht erschein
in her bearing not appeared

weder daz megetlîche nein
neither the maidenly no

noch daz wîplîche jâ.
nor the womanly yes.

sie gebârte tugentlîche dâ,
she bore-herself virtuously there,

sie konde mit züchten übersên,
she could with breeding overlook,

ob ir was icht oder nicht geschên.
whether to-her was anything or nothing happened.

Dô nû die messe gesungen was,
When now the mass sung was,

des herzogen palas
the duke's palace

was alumme und umme gar
was around and around wholly

behangen mit sperlachen clâr,
hung with sheets bright,

die meisterlîche wârn gebriten,
which masterly were woven,

wol geworcht und underspriten
well wrought and interwoven

mit sîden und mit golde.
with silk and with gold.

manch gelwer bluomen tolde,
many-a yellow flower's crown,

rôsen rôt und grüenez gras
roses red and green grass

ûf den estrich geströuwet was.
on the floor strewn was.

was touc hie lange von geseit?
what avails here long of said?

die tische wurden ouch bereit.
the tables became also ready.

dô sie von kirchen quâmen,
when they from church came,

wazzer sie dô nâmen.
water they then took.

er Tristan saz zu tische hin,
sir Tristan sat to table there,

man sazte Isôten neben in:
one set Isolde beside him:

ie zwischen zwein vrouwen guot
ever between two ladies good

saz ein ritter hôchgemuot,
sat a knight high-spirited,

ein vrouwe zwischen rittern zwein:
a lady between knights two:

hie wât gein lichter wête schein
here clothing against bright clothing shone

und golt gein brehendes goldes schîn.
and gold against shining gold's shining.

der herzoge Lovelîn,
the duke Jovelin,

an dem vil hôer êren lac,
on whom very high honors lay,

der inren geste schône pflac;
he of-the-inner guests beautifully took-care;

der ûzern geste über al
of-the outer guests over all

pflac Kâedîn und Kurvenal.
took-care Kaedin and Kurvenal.

vil guoter spîse man dar truoc
very good food one thither bore

und gap in der mê denne gnuoc,
and gave them of-it more than enough,

man gôz in in die trincvaz
one poured to-them into the drinking-vessels

lûtertranc und môraz
clear-drink and mulberry-wine

und edelen kyprischen wîn.
and noble Cyprian wine.

Tristan und die vrouwe sîn
Tristan and the lady his

dâ mit züchten sâzen.
there with breeding sat.

sie beide nicht vil âzen:
they both not much ate:

gedanken an in machten daz,
thoughts in them made that,

dâ ietwederz inne saz:
in-which each within sat:

Tristan gedâchte an jene Isôt,
Tristan thought of that Isolde,

dise Îsôt von gedanken nôt
this Isolde from thoughts' distress

darumbe leit, daz her Tristân
therefore suffered, that sir Tristan

sie hête maget gelân.
her had maiden left.

Dô man nu hête gezzen,
When one now had eaten,

die ritterschaft vormezzen
the knighthood bold

begonden sich rottieren
began themselves band

und schône fêgetieren.
and beautifully adorn.

von manger edelen geburt
of many-a noble birth

huob sich ein wunneclîch buhurt
raised itself a delightful buhurt

alhie vor den vrouwen.
here before the ladies.

die vrouwen giengen schouwen
the ladies went to-look

und leiten in die venster sich.
and laid into the windows themselves.

Isôt die brût gar züchticlich
Isolde the bride very with-breeding

gienc mit den anderen schouwen dar
went with the others looking thither

und nam doch Tristandes war
and took yet of-Tristan heed

in herzen ûf künftige dinc.
in heart to future things.

ir geviel kein jungelinc
to-her pleased no youth

baz wen der edele Tristân,
better than the noble Tristan,

der sie doch maget het gelân.
who her yet maiden had left.

dô nû der buhurt zurgie,
when now the buhurt broke-up,

dô sach man mangen ritter hie
then saw one many-a knight here

verbunden under helmen,
bound under helmets,

die stoubeten den melmen
who raised-dust the dust

und ritterlîchen in der zît
and knightly at the time

ûf einander widerstrît
on each-other in-rivalry

gar prîslîchen stâchen
very praiseworthily thrust

und manich sper zubrâchen.
and many-a spear broke.

swaz kurzewîle ie man began,
whatever pastime ever one began,

die wart alle hin getân
it was all thither done

âne daz eine liebe spil,
except the one dear game,

dâ von ich nicht vil sprechen wil,
there of I not much speak will,

des man in dem bette pfliget,
which one in the bed practices,

sô liep bî liebem liebe liget:
when love beside loved-one lovingly lies:

daz wart von hern Tristân
that was by sir Tristan

zu dirre hôchzît gelân.
at this high-feast left.

Tristan lies beside his bride sighing the name Isolde, and she asks why he is angry with her. He tells her of a vow made to the Virgin when he lay half-drowned after killing the dragon in Ireland: to leave his wife a maiden for a year. She accepts it. Half a year later a messenger from King Arthur meets Tristan coming back from hawking.

Waz hilfet, ob ich lenge daz?
What helps, if I lengthen that?

dô man des âbendes gaz,
when one in-the evening ate,

Îsôt unde her Tristant
Isolde and sir Tristan

zu bette giengen sâ zuhant
to bed went straightway at-once

955 und leiten bî einander sich.
and laid beside each-other themselves.

bî dirre maget minnenclich
beside this maiden lovely

lac er aber als ein ron.
lay he again as a log.

waz sol ich sprechen mê hie von?
what shall I speak more here of?

underwîlen daz geschach,
at-times that happened,

960 daz er ein wörtel gein ir sprach.
that he a little-word toward her spoke.

und swen er daz von munde lie,
and whenever he that from mouth let,

dâ mit ein siufzen stête gie.
there with a sigh always went.

diz underwîlen ouch geschach,
this at-times also happened,

daz er jach mit dem siufzen: „ach!
that he declared with the sigh: „ah!

ach, Isôt, Isôt, Isôt!“
ah, Isolde, Isolde, Isolde!“

des nam sie wunder und tet ir nôt,
of-that took she wonder and did to-her distress,

der die im an der sîten lac,
to-her who to-him at the side lay,

und mit ir keiner liebe pflac;
and with her no love practiced;

sie sprach nicht und gedachte sân:
she spoke not and thought then:

„Tristan, Tristan, Tristân!
„Tristan, Tristan, Tristan!

vriunt, wolt ir icht? ich bin alhie.“
friend, would you anything? I am here.“

ei, wie wêninc weste sie,
ah, how little knew she,

daz ez ein ander Îsôt
that it an other Isolde

was, durch die er leit die nôt.
was, for whom he suffered the distress.

die hôchzît nâch des buoches sage
the high-feast after the book's telling

in vröuden ganzer acht tage
in joys whole eight days

al umb und umbe werte.
all around and around lasted.

Tristan ôt nicht begerte
Tristan just not desired

Isôten noch enwolde,
Isolde nor would,

als er zu rechte solde,
as he by right should,

gemeinschaft haben nicht mit ir.
companionship have not with her.

daz muote sie doch, geloubet mir.
that vexed her yet, believe me.

Dô nû die hôchzît zurgie
When now the high-feast broke-up

und sich die hêrschaft zulie
and itself the lordship dispersed

und die wirtschaft ende nam,
and the feasting end took,

eines nachtes ez sô quam,
one night it so came,

daz die wîzgehande Isôt
that the white-handed Isolde

iren gebrechen und ir nôt
her lack and her distress

in iren sinnen achte
in her senses heeded

und allez daz betrachte,
and all that considered,

daz ir gên Tristande war.
that to-her toward Tristan harmed.

sie gedâchte in irem herzen: „zwâr,
she thought in her heart: „truly,

du wilt in iezu vrâgen,
thou wilt him now ask,

solde es in ouch betrâgen,
should it him also weary,

waz er meine hie mite,
what he means here with,

daz er mit dir alle der site
that he with thee of-all the customs

nicht eines pfliget, der ie man
not one practices, which ever man

mit liebem liebe began.“
with dear love began.“

hie mite sprach ouch sie zuhant:
here with spoke also she at-once:

„vriunt lieber und hêrre Tristant,
„friend dear and lord Tristan,

war umme zürnet ir wider mich?
for what are-angry you against me?

durch iuwer zucht sagt mir, hân ich
for your breeding tell me, have I

wider iuwer hulden icht getân?
against your favor anything done?

des lâzet mich zu buoze stân
for-that let me to amends stand

nâch iuwern gnâden, hêrre guot!“
after your grace, lord good!“

Tristan die wort in sînen muot
Tristan the words into his spirit

mit inneclîchem herzen nam
with heartfelt heart took

und sprach, als im wol gezam:
and spoke, as to-him well befitted:

„zürne ich, vrouwe?“ „jâ!“ sprach sie.
„am-angry I, lady?“ „yes!“ spoke she.

„nein ich“. „ir tuot. nu saget, wie
„not I“. „you do. now say, how

oder wâ von ist kumen daz,
or where from is come that,

hêrre, daz ir mir sît gehaz?“
lord, that you to-me are hostile?“

Mit züchten sprach her Tristân:
With breeding spoke sir Tristan:

„weder haz noch arcwân
„neither hatred nor suspicion

trage ich gein iuch, schœne Isôt.
bear I toward you, fair Isolde.

iuch wirret lîchte ein ander nôt.“
you troubles perhaps an other distress.“

„mir wirret, daz mir wirret,
„me troubles, what me troubles,

daz ich mit iuch verirret
that I with you strayed-from

mannes unde liebes bin.
husband and love am.

des ist betrüebet mîn sin.“
of-that is saddened my mind.“

„sît ir vorirret?“ „jâ“, sprach sie.
„are you strayed?“ „yes“, spoke she.

„wie sô?“ sprach er. „dâ liget ir hie
„how so:“ spoke he. „there lie you here

dem gelîch, als ir sît tôt.“
to-the like, as-if you are dead.“

„meinet irz alsô, mîn schœne Isôt?“
„mean you-it so, my fair Isolde:“

„wie solde ichz anders meinen?
„how should I-it otherwise mean?

ir mochtet mir bescheinen
you might to-me show

doch mit guoter rede, daz
yet with good speech, that

ir mir wêret nicht gehaz.
you to-me were not hostile.

nu liget ir rechte als ein man,
now lie you right as a man,

der nie herzenliep gewan.
who never heart's-love gained.

irn kôset noch enredet nicht;
you chat nor talk not;

swen aber zu reden iuch geschicht,
whenever however to speak to-you happens,

sô ersiufzet ir und sprechet: Isôt,
so sigh you and speak: Isolde,

Isôt, Isôt! wes tuot iuch nôt,
Isolde, Isolde! what does to-you need,

daz ir sô ofte ruofet mir?
that you so often call me?

wêrlîch, hêrre, nu wizzet ir
truly, lord, now know you

wol, daz ich bî iuch lige alhie
well, that I beside you lie here

und daz iuch vriuntlîch kôsen nie
and that to-you friendly chatting never

von mînem munde enwart versaget."
from my mouth was refused."

Tristan verstuont wol, daz die maget
Tristan understood well, that the maiden

hie mite meinte ein ander dinc.
here with meant an other thing.

mit züchten sprach der jungelinc:
with breeding spoke the youth:

„vrouwe Isôt, erloube mir
„lady Isolde, allow me

zu reden ein wênic mit dir!"
to speak a little with thee!"

Isôt alsiufzende sprach
Isolde sighing spoke

ûz listigem herzen: „ach,
out-of cunning heart: „ah,

hêrre mîn, wes schimpfet ir her?
lord my, why jest you hither?

nu ist daz mînes herzen ger
now is that my heart's desire

gewesen dise lange wochen,
been these long weeks,

daz ir mir hêtet gesprochen
that you to-me had spoken

und gekôset mit mir.
and chatted with me.

nu redet an, waz meinet ir?“
now speak on, what mean you?“

Her Tristan zu der megde sprach:
Sir Tristan to the maiden spoke:

„ein âventiure mir geschach
„an adventure to-me happened

zu Weisefort in Irlant:
at Wexford in Ireland:

dâ sluoc ich einen serpant,
there slew I a serpent,

grôz und ungehiure,
great and monstrous,

der werte sich mit viure.
which defended itself with fire.

und als ich in überwant,
and when I it overcame,

dô hête er mich sô gar vorbrant,
then had it me so wholly burned,

daz ich vor hitze kûme genas.
that I from heat barely survived.

ein trüebe lache nâhen was
a murky pool near was

bî mir; dâ senkete ich mich în
by me; there sank I myself in

durch genist des lebens mîn.
for safety of-the life my.

ez was ein wunder wunderlich
it was a wonder wondrous

und wundert sîn noch hiute mich,
and wonders of-it still today me,

daz ich dar inne nicht ertranc,
that I there in not drowned,

wan ich unz an den helm versanc.
for I up to the helmet sank.

und als ich was in dirre nôt,
and when I was in this distress,

der magde ich ein gelübde bôt,
to-the maiden I a vow offered,

die unseren hêrren Crist gebar.
who our Lord Christ bore.

ich swuor ir unde lâze ez wâr:
I swore to-her and let it true:

swenne mir der sêlden tac betaget,
whenever for-me the blessing's day dawns,

daz mir getrûwet würde ein maget,
that to-me wedded were a maiden,

die ich mînem lîbe
whom I for-my person

zu vrouwen und zu wîbe
as lady and as wife

in rechter ê solde hân,
in rightful marriage should have,

daz ich sie maget wolde lân
that I her maiden would leave

und kiusche ein umbe gêndez jâr.
and chaste a round going year.

dô ich den eit volbrâchte gar,
when I the oath completed wholly,

vil schiere mir zu helfe quam
very quickly to-me to help came

ein schœne vrouwe wunnesam
a fair lady delightful

und mit ir eine schœne maget,
and with her a fair maiden,

daz mir sô schœnez nie betaget
that to-me so fair-a-thing never dawned

in herzen noch in ougen wart.
in heart nor in eyes was.

mit iren wîzen henden zart
with their white hands tender

hulfen sie mir von den swêren;
helped they me from the griefs;

ob ez von himele wêren
whether it from heaven were

zwêne engele, des enweiz ich nicht.
two angels, that know I not.

mîn vrouwe Isôt, durch die geschicht
my lady Isolde, for the happening

hân ich wider iuch getân,
have I against you done,

daz ich iuch maget hân gelân
that I you maiden have left

und lâzen muoz, als mir gezimt,
and leave must, as to-me befits,

unz mîn gelübde ein ende nimt."
until my vow an end takes."

„Ei, waz sprechet ir, lieber man?
„Ah, what speak you, dear man?

und habet ir wider mich getân
and have you against me done

an disen dingen, als ir saget?
in these things, as you say?

nein ir, zwâr; und ob ich maget
no you, truly; and if I maiden

blîbe biz an mînen tôt,
remain until to my death,

dar umb gelîde ich nimmer nôt.
there for suffer I never distress.

lât mich sîn, als ich nu sî,
let me be, as I now am,

und sît mir sus mit triuwen bî
and be to-me thus with faithfulness near

und redet mit mir understunt
and speak with me at-times

und versaget mir iuwern munt
and refuse me your mouth

nicht, als ir ê habet getân.“
not, as you before have done.“

Isôt die maget, Tristan der man,
Isolde the maiden, Tristan the man,

die beide hie versuonten sich
they both here reconciled themselves

mit rede harte minneclich.
with speech very lovingly.

Isôten ande und ange
to-Isolde grievous and painful

doch was, daz sie sô lange
yet was, that she so long

des lieben spiles solde enpern.
of-the dear game should forgo.

sie gedâchte: „ez enmac gewern
she thought: „it may last

doch immer nicht diz eine jâr!“
yet ever not this one year!“

und nam ir guot gemüete zwâr.
and took her good mind truly.

dô sie sîner meine enpfant
when she his intent perceived

und ir rechte wart bekant,
and to-her rightly became known,

daz ez nicht anders mochte sîn,
that it not otherwise might be,

sie tet ir tugent an im schîn
she did her virtue on him visible

und lebete mit im alsô wol,
and lived with him so well,

als lieb mit liebe leben sol
as love with love live shall

âne daz eine, daz sie nicht
without the one, that she not

mit sîner minne hête pflicht.
with his love had dealing.

sus lebete er alsô minneclich
thus lived he so lovingly

mit ir, daz sîn vrouten sich
with her, that of-it rejoiced themselves

der herzoge und die herzogîn
the duke and the duchess

und ir bruoder Kâedîn;
and her brother Kaedin;

der vroute sichs vil swinde
he rejoiced himself-of-it very quickly

mit alle dem hovegesinde.
with all the court-household.

Dô nû der süeze Parmenois,
When now the sweet Parmenian,

Tristan der stolze und der kurtois
Tristan the proud and the courteous

in Arundêle aldâ verbleip
in Arundel there remained

und mit Isôten vortreip
and with Isolde passed

der zît vil nâch ein halbez jâr,
of-the time very nearly a half year,

nu was sîn muot vervlizzen gar
now was his spirit devoted wholly

ûf alle weidelîche dinc.
to all hunting things.

eines tages der jungelinc
one day the youth

reit beizen mit den valken sîn;
rode hawking with the falcons his;

mit im reit ouch Kâedîn
with him rode also Kaedin

und der getriuwe Kurvenâl.
and the faithful Kurvenal.

die valken zu dem selben mâl
the falcons at the same time

ervlugen mangen wilden ant,
caught-in-flight many-a wild duck,

vil reiger, mangen vasant,
many herons, many-a pheasant,

hüener und vogel âne zil.
hens and birds without limit.

dô sie nu mit dem vederspil
when them now with the falconry

der kurzewîle dûchte gnuoc,
of-the pastime seemed enough,

und sich die zît des tages truoc
and itself the time of-the day bore

wol gên der vesperstunde,
well toward the vesper-hour,

her Tristan begunde,
sir Tristan began,

der stolze, muotes vrîe,
the proud, of-spirit free,

mit sîner kumpanîe
with his company

gein herbergen gâhen.
toward lodgings to-hasten.

dô sie begonden nâhen
when they began near

dem wunnenclîchen castel
the delightful castle

dâ zu Karke in Arundel,
there at Karke in Arundel,

dô stuont ein linde bî dem wege,
then stood a linden by the way,

die was erzogen mit sulcher pflege,
which was raised with such care,

daz sie mit esten und mit blaten
that it with branches and with leaves

gap vollen wint und grôzen schaten;
gave full wind and great shade;

dar under mîn er Tristant
there under my sir Tristan

einen garzûn sitzen vant
a groom sitting found

der hête gestrichen vaste
who had ranged hard

des tages und was durch raste
of-the day and was for rest

gesezzen zu der linden.
sat to the linden.

her Tristant nicht erwinden
sir Tristan not turn-aside

wolde mit den gesellen sîn,
would with the companions his,

er und sîn swâger Kâedîn
he and his brother-in-law Kaedin

und Kurvenal die kêrten dar.
and Kurvenal they turned thither.

der knappe schiere wart gewar,
the squire quickly became aware,

daz der hêrre gein im reit,
that the lord toward him rode,

ûf spranc er mit hübescheit.
up sprang he with courtliness.

von grüenem vritschâl ein tschabrûn
of green frieze a chaperon

der lac dâ bî dem garzûn,
it lay there by the groom,

den begreif er schiere gnuoc,
that seized he quickly enough,

über sîn achsel er in sluoc;
over his shoulder he it flung;

sîn roc was hübeschlîch gesniten
his coat was courtly cut

wol nâch gêndes boten siten
well after walking messenger's manners

von guotem sagite rôt;
of good say red;

der roc sich an der lenge bôt
the coat itself in the length offered

nicht verrer dan unz ûf die knie;
not farther than up to the knees;

des selben tuoches wâren die
of-the same cloth were the

hosen, die der knappe truoc,
hose, which the squire wore,

rôt sîne schuoh und hübesch gnuoc.
red his shoes and courtly enough.

der linden loubes ein schapel
of-the linden's leaves a garland

hête ûf sîn houbet der knappe snel
had on his head the squire quick

gesetzet harte stolzlich.
set very proudly.

nâch sînem stabe bucte sich
after his staff stooped himself

der wegemüede sarjant
the way-weary sergeant

und nam in in die zeswen hant;
and took it into the right hand;

den arm er von im stracte,
the arm he from him stretched,

den stab der knappe stacte
the staff the squire stuck

ein wênic in die erden
a little into the earth

und stuont in den gebêrden,
and stood in the bearing,

als er antwurten solde,
as-if he answer should,

ob man in vrâgen wolde.
if one him ask would.

Her Tristan hübsch und gruozsam
Sir Tristan courtly and greeting-ready

den knappen gruozte, als im gezam;
the squire greeted, as to-him befitted;

und er im under ougen sach,
and he him into eyes looked,

alsus gruozte er in und sprach:
thus greeted he him and spoke:

„dêus sal, kurteis kumpân!“
„God-you save, courteous companion!“

der knappe im dankte und sach in an
the squire him thanked and looked him at

und sprach: „merzi, gentil sir!“
and spoke: „thanks, noble sir!“

her Tristan sprach: „nu saget mir,
sir Tristan spoke: „now tell me,

stolzer knappe vrech und vruot,
proud squire bold and wise,

durch iuwern hübeschlîchen muot,
for your courtly spirit,

ûz welchem rîche kumt ir her,
out-of which realm come you hither,

waz werbet ir, waz ist iuwer ger,
what seek you, what is your desire,

welch âventiure hât iuch gesant
which adventure has you sent

sô verre in dise unkunde lant?“
so far into these unknown lands?“

der verre kumende garzûn
the far coming groom

sprach: „hêrre, ich bin ein Britûn;
spoke: „lord, I am a Briton;

Britânje heizet daz lant,
Britain is-called the land,

von dannen ich ûz bin gesant;
from thence I out am sent;

mîn hêrre heizet künic Artûs,
my lord is-called king Arthur,

zu Karidol dâ hât er hûs
at Karidol there has he house
und stêt sîn hof sô küniclîch
and stands his court so kingly
und ist ein künic sô êrenrîch,
and is a king so honor-rich,
daz man von sîner vrumekeit
that one of his prowess
liset, singet unde seit."
reads, sings and says."

V · THE ROUND TABLE

Tristan brings Arthur's messenger home. After the meal the squire describes the Round Table, where five hundred knights sit as equals and no coward or faithless man can sit without being exposed. Tristan resolves to go, gives twenty knights shields and clothing, and with the leave of his wife's family and the reluctant leave of his wife sails for Britain.

Dô künic Artûs wart genant,
When king Arthur was named,
der êrenrîche Tristant
the honor-rich Tristan
sâ zuhant und an der stat
straightway at-once and on the spot
den knappen hiez unde bat
the squire commanded and bade
mit im gein herberge gên.
with him toward lodging go.
der knappe sich wol konde vorstên,
the squire himself well could understand,
daz erz billîch solde tuon.
that he-it fittingly should do.

des hêrren Rîwalînes sun
the lord Riwalin's son

was ie von kinde, als ich vornam,
was ever from child, as I heard,

geminne unde mitesam,
lovable and companionable,

daz an im ouch dô erschein:
which in him also then appeared:

dem knappen ûf sîn achselbein
to-the squire on his shoulder-bone

legte er sîne zeswen hant;
laid he his right hand;

alsô reit er Tristant
thus rode he Tristan

mit dem knappen kôsende;
with the squire chatting;

der knappe was im lôsende.
the squire was to-him listening.

durch sîne zucht der knappe greif
for his breeding the squire grasped

dem hêrren an den stegereif;
to-the lord at the stirrup;

alsus gienc im der knappe neben,
thus went to-him the squire beside,

vrâge und antworte geben
question and answer give

begonden sie ein ander vil
began they one another much

und schœner rede sunder zil.
and of-fair speech without limit.

doch vrâgete in hier under
yet asked him here among

her Tristan besunder,
sir Tristan apart,

in welch rîche oder in welch lant
into which realm or into which land

er von Britânje wêre gesant.
he from Britain were sent.

Der knappe züchteclîche
The squire with-breeding

sprach: „hêrre, in alle rîche,
spoke: „lord, into all realms,

swâ künige oder vürsten sîn,
wherever kings or princes are,

den sol ich die botschaft mîn
to-them shall I the message my

künden offenlîchen,
announce openly,

swaz ich ir ôt bestrîchen
whatever I of-them just cover

in einem ganzen jâre kan."
in a whole year can."

„waz botschaft?" sprach er Tristan,
„what message?" spoke sir Tristan,

„vriunt lieber, des bescheide mich!"
„friend dear, of-that inform me!"

„hêrre, wizzet, daz ich",
„lord, know, that I",

sprach der knappe sân zuhant,
spoke the squire straightway at-once,

„sô schœne mêre iuch tu bekant,
„so fair tidings to-you do known,

daz ir in allen iuwern tagen
that you in all your days

habet nie gehœret sagen
have never heard say

sô hübsche mêre gehiure
so courtly tidings gentle

von schœner âventiure;
of fair adventure;

und waz iuch von mir wirt geseit,
and what to-you by me is said,

daz ist die ganze wârheit,
that is the whole truth,

des hân ich wâre brieve alhie."
of-that have I true letters here."

inredes dô quâmen sie
meanwhile then came they

in daz schœne castel
into the fair castle

dâ zu Karke in Arundel.
there at Karke in Arundel.

Dô daz gesinde vornam,
When the household perceived,

daz Tristan ir hêrre quam,
that Tristan their lord came,

dô wart der gegenlouf sô grôz,
then became the running-to-meet so great,

der schal sô michel und der dôz,
the noise so much and the din,

daz sie die mêre liezen ligen
that they the tidings let lie

und der rede wart geswigen
and of-the speech was silent

von disem enlenden man.
about this foreign man.

nu wurden ouch die tische sân
now became also the tables then

schône und vürstelîch bereit,
beautifully and princely ready,

tuoch und brôt dar ûf geleit,
cloth and bread there on laid,

als hôen vürsten wol gezam.
as to-high princes well befitted.

der wirt des hûses wazzer nam
the host of-the house water took

mit sîner massenîe gar.
with his household wholly.

her Tristan liez nemen war
sir Tristan let take heed

des knappen mit rîchlîcher pflege,
of-the squire with rich care,

wan er was stête und alle wege
for he was steadfast and all ways

vorbedêchtic unde vruot.
prudent and wise.

des knappen hübesch unde guot
of-the squire courtly and good

hiez der zierlîche degen
bade the elegant warrior

sô wol zu sîner mâze pflegen,
so well after his measure to-take-care,

daz sîn weder ê noch sît,
that of-him neither before nor since,

vor und nâch, zu keiner zît
earlier and later, at no time

nie mê wart gepflogen baz.
never more was taken-care better.

dô man nû zu hove gaz
when one now at court ate

und man die tische tet hin dan,
and one the tables did away thence,

den vürsten gap man wazzer sân,
to-the princes gave one water then,

den rittern und den vrouwen gar.
to-the knights and to-the ladies wholly.

her Tristan rief dem knappen dar
sir Tristan called the squire thither

und hiez daz gesinde
and bade the household

von kinde zu kinde
from child to child

stille swîgen unde dagen
still be-silent and hush

und bat im den knappen sagen
and bade him the squire tell

die mêre, dâ er ê sie liez.
the tidings, where he before them left.

der knappe tet, daz er in hiez.
the squire did, what he him bade.

Der knappe was ouch rederîch,
The squire was also eloquent,

geblüemet schône und hübeschlîch
flowered beautifully and courtly

was alle sîne rede gar;
was all his speech wholly;

rechte als der rôsen wurfe dar,
right as-if one roses threw thither,

sus bluoten in der stunde
thus bloomed at the hour

die wort ûz sînem munde.
the words out-of his mouth.

er jach: „hêrre, ich bin gesant
he declared: „lord, I am sent

in alle rîche, in alle lant,
into all realms, into all lands,

zu künigen und zu vürsten,
to kings and to princes,

zu helden, die sich dürsten
to heroes, who themselves thirst

lân nâch ritterlîcher tât:
let after knightly deed:

den künde ich, daz mîn hêrre hât,
to-them announce I, that my lord has,

der edele künic Artûs,
the noble king Arthur,

zu Karidol in sînem hûs
at Karidol in his house

ûz küniclîches sinnes kraft
out-of kingly mind's power

zu êren aller ritterschaft
for honor of-all knighthood

einer tavelrunde erdâcht,
a round-table devised,

die ist sô meisterlîch volbrâcht,
it is so masterly accomplished,

sô rîche und alsô kostelîch,
so rich and so costly,

daz nindert künic ir gelîch
that nowhere king its like

mac in allen rîchen hân."
may in all realms have."

„tavelrunde?" sprach Tristân,
„round-table?" spoke Tristan,

„trût geselle, waz ist daz?"
„dear companion, what is that?"

„zwâr, hêrre, ich bescheide iuch baz
„truly, lord, I inform you better

des wortes tavelrunde:
of-the word round-table:

sprêche ich tavelrotunde,
spoke I table-rotunde,

sô tête ich dem namen recht;
so would-do I to-the name right;

rotunde sprichet schîbelecht.
rotunde says disk-shaped.

Tavelrunde ein tavil ist,
Round-table a table is,

die ist ûz spêhes sinnes list
it is out-of artful mind's art

genumen und hât ouch grôze recht
taken and has also great right

und ist alumme schîbelecht
and is all-around disk-shaped

geformet rechte alsam ein rat
formed right just-as a wheel

und ist sô breit, daz volle stat
and is so broad, that full room

wît und gerûme dar an
wide and spacious there at

wol vünfhundert ritter hân,
well five-hundred knights have,

der ieteslîcher sî ein helt
of-whom each be a hero

und zu der tavelen erwelt,
and to the table chosen,

menlîch und genende.
manly and daring.

die tavel houbt noch ende
the table head nor end

hât nicht weder hie noch dort,
has not neither here nor there,

nindert ecke noch kein ort:
nowhere corner nor any point:

die helde, die mit ritters tât
the heroes, who with knight's deed

ir manheit sô gewirdet hât
their manliness so honored have

und ritterlîch erworben hân,
and knightly earned have,

daz sie gesitzen dar an,
that they sit there at,

die sitzen alle hêrlîch,
they sit all lordly,

in einer hêrschaft alle glîch."
in one lordship all equal."

Her Tristan der kurteise,
Sir Tristan the courteous,

der valscheit ein weise,
of falseness an orphan,

sprach: „trût geselle, hübscher knecht,
spoke: „dear companion, courtly lad,

sage mir von der tavelen recht:
tell me of the table's right:

wie grôze recht mac sie doch hân?"
how great right may it yet have?"

„hêrre", sprach der knappe sân,
„lord", spoke the squire then,

„swelch ritter des geruochet
„whichever knight of-that deigns

und âventiure suochet
and adventure seeks

dâ heime in mînes hêrren lant,
there at-home in my lord's land,

und wirt daz an im erkant,
and is that in him recognized,

daz er ritterschefte gert,
that he knighthood desires,

der wirt er volleclîch gewert.
of-it is he fully granted.

ist dan, daz er bewêren kan,
(if)-is then, that he prove can,

daz er ein ritter und ein man
that he a knight and a man

von ritters tât geheizen mac,
from knight's deed be-called may,

dem taget dâ der sêlden tac,
to-him dawns there the blessing's day,

der im in lichtem schîne enstêt.
which to-him in bright shining rises.

ahie! wie spilende im ûf gêt
ah! how playing to-him up goes

der vröude brehende sunne!
of-the joy shining sun!

die wunnende wunne
the delighting bliss

der wertlîchen werdikeit,
of-the worldly worthiness,

die wirt im wunnenclîch bereit;
it becomes to-him delightfully ready;

er muoz ouch haben rechtez adel
he must also have true nobility

und lûtere triuwe sunder tadel,
and pure faithfulness without blame,

die erben zu dem schilde;
which inherit to the shield;

und wirt ouch rechte milde
and is also true bounty

und zucht an im ervunden,
and breeding in him found,

schône an die tavelrunden
beautifully at the round-table

wirt er sâ gesetzet
is he then set

und alles des ergetzet,
and of-all that compensated,

ob im leit oder ungemach
if to-him sorrow or discomfort

in sînen tagen ie geschach.
in his days ever happened.

Vernemet, hêrre, als ich iuch sage:
Hear, lord, as I to-you say:

an die tavele kein zage
at the table no coward

tar gesitzen noch kein man,
dare sit nor any man,

der untriuwe ie gewan
who faithlessness ever gained

sô breit sam ein gespalden hâr.
so broad as a split hair.

ist aber, daz er gesitzet dar,
(if)-is however, that he sits there,

der êrste bizze meldet in
the first bite betrays him

und wirt wan laster sîn gewin.
and becomes only shame his gain.

swer aber daz verschulden kan
whoever however that deserve can

und im des heiles vrou Sêlde gan
and to-him the salvation lady Fortune grants

und im den trôst Gelücke birt,
and to-him the comfort Luck bears,

daz er dâ zu hove wirt
that he there at court is

genant ein tavelrunder,
named a round-tabler,

den hât man ûz besunder
him holds one out apart

in sô hôer werdikeit
in so high worthiness

und wirt sîn lop sô wît, sô breit
and becomes his praise so wide, so broad

und sîner êren krîe
and of-his honors cry

von alle der massenîe
by all the household

wirt geruofen ûf daz zil,
is cried to the goal,

daz einem künige wêre zu vil
that for-a king were too much

der schalbêren werdikeit,
of-the resounding worthiness,

die im zu hove dâ wirt bereit,
which to-him at court there becomes ready,

und wirt sîns lobes schal gesant
and is his praise's sound sent

mit hôer wirde in alle lant."
with high worth into all lands."

der knappe sîn wârzeichen
the squire his token

und sîne brieve reichen
and his letters to-hand

begonde dem hêrren in die hant.
began to-the lord into the hand.

der wol gelêrte Tristant
the well learned Tristan

an den brieven selber las,
in the letters himself read,

daz alle die rede wâr was,
that all the speech true was,

die der knappe het gesaget.
which the squire had said.

hie mit wart der mêre gedaget.
here with was of-the tidings silent.

Her Tristan sâ zu bette gienc.
Sir Tristan then to bed went.

ob sîn herze muot gevienc,
whether his heart spirit caught,

daz weiz ich sunder vrâge wol.
that know I without question well.

sîn herze daz wart muotes vol,
his heart it became of-spirit full,

im stolzte herze unde muot,
to-him swelled heart and spirit,

sîn muot der wart sô rechte guot
his spirit it became so rightly good

und ûf die hübschen mêre verdâcht,
and on the courtly tidings bent,

daz er wêninc slief die nacht.
that he little slept the night.

sîn manheit und ir minne,
his manliness and her love,

der süezen küniginne,
of-the sweet queen,

der blunden Isôte,
the blonde Isolde,

die reizten ie genôte
they spurred ever eagerly

den helt ûf niuwe ritterschaft.
the hero toward new knighthood.

sîn lîp und al sîns herzen kraft,
his body and all his heart's power,

sîn gedanc, muot unde sin,
his thought, spirit and mind,

die stuonden im ôt alles hin
they stood to-him just all away

gein Britânje in daz lant,
toward Britain into the land,

aldâ man âventiure vant
where one adventure found

und dâ man ritterschefte pflac.
and where one knighthood practiced.

des morgens vruo, dô ez wart tac
in-the morning early, when it became day

und der hêrre Tristân
and the lord Tristan

begonde ûf von dem bette stân
began up from the bed stand

und er von keminâten gie,
and he from chamber went,

nû was ouch der bote hie;
now was also the messenger here;

urloup er von dem hêrren nam.
leave he from the lord took.

der hêrre in liez, als im wol zam,
the lord him let, as to-him well befitted,

mit guoter handelunge.
with good treatment.

Tristan der süeze junge
Tristan the sweet young-one

hiez im zu sîner lîpnar
bade to-him for his livelihood

zwô marc goldes wegen dar.
two marks of-gold weigh thither.

die nam der knappe und wart vrô,
them took the squire and became glad,

dem hêrren schône dankte er dô;
the lord beautifully thanked he then;

hin gâhte der kurteise
away hastened the courteous

ûf sîne wegereise.
on his way-journey.

Hie nâhet âventiure:
Here nears adventure:

der Parmenois gehiure
the Parmenian gentle

wil sîne reise nû nicht sparn,
will his journey now not spare,

er wil nâch âventiure varn,
he will after adventure fare,

sîne jugent die gehiuren
his youth the gentle

die wil er âventiuren;
it will he adventure;

âventiure wil er gern
adventure will he desire

und âventiure wil er wern;
and adventure will he grant;

swer âventiure an in begert,
whoever adventure from him desires,

âventiure er den gewert.
adventure he them grants.

der sun Blanschefliuren
the son of-Blanscheflur

der was mit âventiuren
he was with adventures

von kinde erwachsen und erzogen;
from child grown and raised;

sint daz er âventiure gepflogen
since that he adventure practiced

mit êren hête unz an den tac,
with honors had until to the day,

dâ von im âventiure lac
there from to-him adventure lay

in herzen zu aller stunde;
in heart at every hour;

im was die tavelrunde
to-him was the round-table

mit stolzlîcher stiure
with proud help

zu niuwer âventiure
to new adventure

in sîn manlîch herze kumen.
into his manly heart come.

nu hête ouch Kurvenal vernumen,
now had also Kurvenal heard,

daz sînem hêrren was sîn muot
that to-his lord was his spirit

strîtic, willic unde guot
combative, willing and good

gein Britânje in daz lant.
toward Britain into the land.

sunder sûmen sâ zuhant
without delay straightway at-once

mit Kurvenâles râte
with Kurvenal's counsel

gienc her Tristan drâte,
went sir Tristan quickly,

dâ er vant den sweher sîn
where he found the father-in-law his

und sîne swiger die herzogîn;
and his mother-in-law the duchess;

mit züchten er dâ vür sie trat,
with breeding he there before them stepped,

gar züchticlîche er ouch sie bat,
very with-breeding he also them bade,

daz sie im erloubten die vart.
that they to-him allowed the journey.

die bete vürbaz geschoben wart
the request further pushed was

an iren sun Kâedîn
to their son Kaedin

und an Isôt die vrouwen sîn.
and to Isolde the lady his.

dô Kâedîn die mêre vernam,
when Kaedin the tidings heard,

er jach getriuwelîche, als im zam:
he declared faithfully, as to-him befitted:

„swâ mîn swâger Tristan
„wherever my brother-in-law Tristan

êren icht erwerben kan,
of-honors anything win can,

dâ sul wir alle dienen zu.
there shall we all serve to.

Isôt mîn swester, wil aber du
Isolde my sister, will however thou

gunnen im der reise?“
grant him the journey?“

die kiusche und die kurteise
the chaste and the courteous

ein siufzen dâ erscheinete;
a sigh there showed;

ob siez von herzen meinete,
whether she-it from heart meant,

des wizzen nicht die sinne mîn.
that know not the senses my.

Isôt die sprach: „möchte ez sîn,
Isolde she spoke: „might it be,

daz er hie wolde blîben,
that he here would remain,

mit uns die zît vortrîben,
with us the time pass,

daz wêre mir verre lieber zwâr,
that would-be to-me far dearer truly,

wan daz er vert, wir enwizzen war;
than that he fares, we not-know whither;

doch sint er hôhes prîses vil
yet since he of-high prize much

erwerben mac, dar um ich wil
win may, there for I will

im nicht leiden die vart.“
to-him not spoil the journey.“

Blanschemanîs die maget zart
Blanschemanis the maiden tender

gedâchte in irem sinne:
thought in her mind:

„sint daz ich sîner minne
„since that I of-his love

doch muoz enpern diz halbe jâr,
yet must forgo this half year,

sô wil ich im erlouben zwâr
so will I him allow truly

die reise und wil in lâzen varn."
the journey and will him let fare."

des edelen Rîwalînes barn,
the noble Riwalin's child,

von Parmenîe Tristan,
of Parmenie Tristan,

ir aller urloup dô gewan.
of-them all leave then gained.

Her Tristan dô bereite sich
Sir Tristan then readied himself

ûf die vart gar ritterlich;
for the journey very knightly;

von rechter art der milde
from true nature the bountiful-one

gap zwênzic rittern schilde:
gave twenty knights shields:

die hête er ûz gesundert;
those had he out set-apart;

dô im die vünfhundert
when to-him the five-hundred

von Parmenîe quâmen
from Parmenie came

und sie den sic hie nâmen,
and they the victory here took,

wider heim zu lande sande er sie
back home to land sent he them

alle und behielt die zwênzic hie;
all and kept the twenty here;

ieslîchem drîer hande cleit
to-each of-three kinds garments

gap er, die man stolzlîch sneit
gave he, which one proudly cut

wol nâch rîtterlîchem site.
well after knightly custom.

er hiez in geben ouch hie mite
he bade to-them give also here with

alle daz gereite und alle den rât,
all the gear and all the provision,

der ritterschefte wol an stât:
which to-knighthood well on stands:

schœne ros und schœne pfert;
fair steeds and fair palfreys;

er gap ouch den helden wert
he gave also to-the heroes worthy

gürtel, heftel, vingerlîn,
belts, brooches, rings,

hûben und biutel sîdîn.
caps and purses silken.

mit borten was alle ire wât
with braids was all their clothing

wol bestalt und umbenât,
well furnished and edged,

gevazzet mit spêhen snüeren.
set with artful cords.

sie wurben, als sie vüeren
they moved, as-if they fared
in engelischer wîse
in angelic manner
her ûz dem paradîse:
hither out-of the paradise:
sus was die ritterlîche schar
thus was the knightly company
an lîbe, an wât geschœnet gar
in body, in clothing beautified wholly
und wol gezieret über al.
and well adorned over all.
der züchte marschalc Kurvenal
the breeding's marshal Kurvenal
und aller tugent ein kamerer
and of-all virtue a chamberlain
mit inneclîches herzen ger,
with heartfelt heart's desire,
mit râte und ouch mit lêre
with counsel and also with teaching
was sînes hêrren êre
was of-his lord's honor
mit ganzen triuwen vlîzic;
with whole faithfulness diligent;
junchêrren zwêne und drîzic
squires two and thirty
riet er im cleiden ûf die vart.
counseled he him to-clothe for the journey.
allez sîn gesinde wart
all his household was
schône ûz gerüstet und bereit.
beautifully out armed and ready.
nu wart ouch an ein schif geleit,
now was also onto a ship laid,

gevüeret und getragen dar an
brought and carried there on

al sîn gerête und sîner man.
all his gear and of-his men.

Den herzogen und die herzogîn,
The duke and the duchess,

Isôten unde Kâedîn
Isolde and Kaedin

bevalch der hêrre Tristant
commended the lord Tristan

in des hôsten küniges hant.
into the highest king's hand.

mit im sie sich bereiten,
with him they themselves readied,

den hêrren sie beleiten
the lord they escorted

zu schiffe unz an des wazzers stat.
to ship until at the water's place.

allen iren vröuden mat
to-all their joys mate

wart dâ gesaget sunder schâch;
was there said without check;

dem hêrren sie mit jâmer nâch
the lord they with misery after

sâhen, dô er nû stiez abe
looked, when he now pushed off

und hin vuor ûf der wilden habe.
and away went on the wild sea.

der wâcwîse Tristân
the wave-wise Tristan

ûf dem wâge sich verstân
on the wave himself understand

wol konde nâch den rîchen:
well could after the realms:

des vuor dâ sicherlîchen
therefore went there securely

des stolzen Rîwalînes kint.
the proud Riwalin's child.

guot weter unde guoten wint
good weather and good wind

sîn schepfer im bescherte
his creator him granted

ûf diser wazzerverte.
on this water-journey.

VI · TRISTAN AND GAWAIN

Tristan lands a day's ride from Karidol, where knights fight in earnest in the forest around Arthur's castle. Armed better than on the day he killed Morold, he rides out and jousts with a strange knight. Both are unhorsed and fight on with swords. When Tristan cries his war cry of Parmenie, his opponent breaks off. Denying that he yields, the knight says the cry belongs to his dearest friend, whom he has never seen. He names himself Gawain, and Tristan makes himself known.

Zu Britânje in daz lant
To Britain into the land

quam der hêrre Tristant
came the lord Tristan

mit vröuden sunder leide.
with joys without sorrow.

glîch eine tageweide
equal one day's-journey

hête er von der habe wol
had he from the harbor well

hin ûf die burc zu Karidol.
thither up-to the castle at Karidol.

der hêrre hübesch und gemeit
the lord courtly and merry

die tageweide nicht volreit; 1580
the day's-journey not rode-out;

er zogete sunder île,
he traveled without haste,

unz er kûme eine mîle
until he barely one mile

hête ûf daz wunneclîche hûs,
had to the delightful house,

dâ der êren künic Artûs
where the honors' king Arthur

mit sîner massenîe was. 1585
with his household was.

in einem stetel, als ich las,
in a little-town, as I read,

Tristan der hôchgemuote bleip,
Tristan the high-spirited stayed,

dar inne er die zît vertreip
there in he the time passed

unz an den morgen die nacht.
until to the morning the night.

nu hête ouch sinneclîch bedâcht 1590
now had also thoughtfully considered

der wîse, cluoge Kurvenal,
the wise, clever Kurvenal,

daz daz lant über al
that the land over all

was schœner âventiure vol,
was of-fair adventure full,

und umb daz hûs zu Karidol
and about the house at Karidol

dâ suochten ie besunder
there sought ever apart

die werden tavelrunder
the worthy round-tablers

âventiure in widerstrît
adventure in rivalry

alle tage und alle zît,
all days and all time,

alle stunt und alle wîle.
every hour and every while.

breit einer halben mîle
broad of-a half mile

gienc umb die burc ein schœner tan,
went about the castle a fair forest,

manch bluomen bernder grüener plân
many-a flower bearing green meadow

gar wunneclîch dar inne lac:
very delightfully there in lay:

hiu, waz man ritterschefte pflac
hey, what one knighthood practiced

in dem tan und vor dem tan!
in the forest and before the forest!

swelch ritter dâ den andern an
whichever knight there the other at

quam und er in gewâpent vant
came and he him armed found

zu rosse und er im unbekant
on horse and he to-him unknown

was, des mochte sîn kein rât,
was, of-that might be no help,

ern müeste in ritterlîcher tât
unless-he must in knightly deed

ûf lîp, ûf guot, ûf êre wern.
for life, for goods, for honor defend.

dâ wart mit schilden und mit spern
there was with shields and with spears

ritterernst, nicht ritterspil
knight's-earnest, not knight's-play

gepflogen und geüebet vil,
practiced and exercised much,

vil und vil und âne zal.
much and much and without number.

diz hête allez Kurvenal
this had all Kurvenal

wol vernumen und was im kunt:
well heard and was to-him known:

sînem hêrren sâ zustunt
to-his lord straightway at-once

die gelegenheit er sagete
the situation he told

des morgens, dô ez tagete.
in-the morning, when it dawned.

Swie gar der küene Tristan
However wholly the bold Tristan

manlîches herzen was ein man,
of-manly heart was a man,

doch wizzet sicherlîche, daz
yet know surely, that

in noch verre herzte baz
him still far hearted better

die blunde künigîn Isôt.
the blonde queen Isolde.

jâ daz schœne morgenrôt
yes the fair morning-red

quam in sîn herze glestende,
came into his heart gleaming,

ir minne was in vestende
her love was him strengthening

und sterkende ûf menlîche tât.
and making-strong for manly deed.

übergnuoc und vollen rât
over-enough and full provision

hête er von wâpen mit im dâ,
had he of arms with him there,

dar în er wart gewâpent sâ
there into he was armed then

sô ritterlîchen ûf die vart,
so knightly for the journey,

daz er sô ritterlîchen wart
that he so knightly was

gewâpent nie bî sînen tagen.
armed never in his days.

er wart gewâpent, hôrte ich sagen,
he was armed, heard I say,

noch baz wan zu dem mâle,
still better than at the time,

dô er zu Kurnewâle
when he in Cornwall

manlîchen sluoc Morolden,
manfully slew Morold,

den gotes unholden.
the to-God hateful-one.

Dô er nu wol gewâpent was,
When he now well armed was,

sîn ros verdecket, als ich las,
his steed caparisoned, as I read,

was schône, daz man im dar zôch;
was beautifully, which one to-him thither drew;

ebenstarc und vollenhôch
evenly-strong and full-high

was ez zu mâze wol dem man;
was it to measure well for-the man;

dar ûf sich swanc her Tristan.
there on himself swung sir Tristan.

und er ûf daz ros gesaz,
when he onto the steed sat,

nu was daz ros gemannet baz,
now was the steed manned better,

wenne gerosset was der man.
than horsed was the man.

vürbaz, als ich bescheiden kan,
further, as I relate can,

sô was der man geherzet wol
so was the man hearted well

und ouch daz herze muotes vol;
and also the heart of-spirit full;

der muot was vröuden hügende,
the spirit was of-joys mindful,

sô was der man ouch tügende
so was the man also availing

dem herzen und dem muote.
to-the heart and to-the spirit.

ûf ritterschaft der vruote,
toward knighthood the wise-one,

gar sinnic und vorstendic,
very thoughtful and understanding,

vornünftic und genendic
reasonable and daring

ûf manheit und ûf alle tugent,
toward manliness and toward all virtue,

der weste wol, daz sîne jugent
he knew well, that his youth

des selben tages sân zuhant
of-the same day straightway at-once

âventiure in vollen vant.
adventure in full found.

des wart sîn junger stolzer muot
therefore became his young proud spirit

guot unde vruot, vruot unde guot;
good and wise, wise and good;

ûf dise vart gar ritterlîch
for this journey very knightly

wart sîn herze muotes rîch.
became his heart of-spirit rich.

Der muotes rîche Tristân
The of-spirit rich Tristan

und solde er muot geteilet hân,
and should he spirit divided have,

er hête tûsent herze
he would-have thousand hearts

âne allen zwîvels smerze
without all doubt's pain

gerîchet wol mit muote.
enriched well with spirit.

nu huob ouch sich der vruote
now raised also himself the wise-one

von der herbergen sân
from the lodging then

gein der âventiure tan
toward the adventure forest

hin ûf daz wunnenclîche velt,
thither up-onto the delightful field,

dâ man der âventiure gelt
where one of-the adventure payment

mit Karles lôte widerwac.
with Charles's weight weighed.

Kurvenal sîns helmes pflac
Kurvenal of-his helmet took-care

und vuorte in sînem hêrren mite,
and carried it to-his lord with,

wan im der ritterschefte site
for to-him the knighthood's manner

was vor den anderen wol bekant.
was before the others well known.

nu zogete ouch her Tristant,
now traveled also sir Tristan,

der junge muotes reine,
the young of-spirit pure,

lancsême unde seine
slowly and leisurely

und was sich umbe sehende,
and was himself around looking,

wartende unde spehende,
watching and espying,

ob im durch ritterlîchen sîte
whether toward-him by knightly custom

ieman zu vâre engegen rite.
anyone in hostility against should-ride.

er reit, unz er kûme an den tan
he rode, until he barely to the forest

drî rosloufe mochte hân;
three horse-runs might have;

ritterschaft was alle sîn ger.
knighthood was all his desire.

nu vuor ein ritter dort her
now went a knight there hither

ûz der âventiure tan
out-of the adventure forest

leisierende ûf den grüenen plân.
ambling onto the green meadow.

er vuor in sulcher zierde,
he went in such adornment,

als allez sîn zimierde
as-if all his crest

wêre brâcht ûz Indiâ;
were brought out-of India;

sîn ros under im mit sprüngen dâ
his steed under him with leaps there

snelles gevertes schône pflac;
of-swift going beautifully practiced;

sîn schilt vor sînem herzen lac,
his shield before his heart lay,

rechte als er wêre gelîmet dar;
right as-if it were glued there;

sîn helm was lûter, spiegelvar;
his helmet was clear, mirror-colored;

den hête er in den stunden
that had he at the hour

vaste ûf sîn houbt gebunden;
firmly onto his head bound;

in sîner zeswen hant ein sper
in his right hand a spear

vuorte er unde vuor dort her
carried he and went there hither

in allen den gebêrden,
in all the bearing,

als ob in ûf der erden
as if him on the earth

nieman törste bestân.
no-one dared withstand.

vor dem tan ûf dem plân
before the forest on the meadow

der ritter lobesam gehielt:
the knight praiseworthy halted:

sîn herze grôzer manheit wielt.
his heart great manliness wielded.

Her Tristan wart ouch sîn gewar.
Sir Tristan became also of-him aware.

er hiez im balde reichen dar
he bade to-him quickly hand thither

den werden Kurvenâlen
the worthy Kurvenal

sînen helm gar lichtgemâlen.
his helmet very bright-painted.

dem hêrren Kurvenal zuhant
to-the lord Kurvenal at-once

den tiuren helm zu houbte bant
the precious helmet to head bound

und gap im in sîn hant ein sper.
and gave him into his hand a spear.

des hêrren ritterschaft und er,
the lord's knighthood and he,

die muosten wîchen ab dem plân
they must withdraw from the meadow

von dem hêrren vaste hin dan.
from the lord far away thence.

man pflac des siten in der zît,
one practiced the custom at the time,

daz ein man dem anderen strît
that one man to-the other battle
muoste sunder helfe geben;
must without help give;
swie vil im helfer hielden neben,
however many to-him helpers held beside,
sie entorsten im nicht gehelfen doch.
they dared him not help yet.
pflêge man des selben siten noch,
practiced one the same custom still,
man vunde in mangem lande
one would-find in many-a land
noch junge Tristande.
still young Tristans.
Als muoste ouch eine hie bestân
So must also alone here withstand
dem vrechen ritter ûz dem tan
the bold knight out-of the forest
der junge Parmenois Tristant.
the young Parmenian Tristan.
wart ie velt, anger oder sant
was ever field, meadow or sand
gezieret mit zwein ritteren guot,
adorned with two knights good,
sô was mit disen ritteren vruot
so was with these knights wise
gezieret wol daz selbe velt.
adorned well the same field.
ieslîcher ûf der minne gelt
each for the love's payment
nam sîn ros mit den sporn;
took his steed with the spurs;

hurtlîch die helde hôchgeborn
vigorously the heroes high-born

und nîtlîch ûf einander triben;
and hostilely on each-other drove;

sie trâfen beide, als ich beschriben
they struck both, as I written

an disen âventiuren vant.
in these adventures found.

ir beider sper unz an die hant
their both spears up to the hand

sich von den herten stichen cluben;
themselves from the hard thrusts split;

sie brâchen; die drunzilen stuben
they broke; the splinters flew

zu tûsent stucken in die luft.
to thousand pieces into the air.

von ir beider herzen guft
from their both hearts' pride

die tjost sô nîtlîch sich getruoc,
the joust so hostilely itself bore,

daz ieslîch ros des andern buoc
that each steed the other's shoulder

traf sô rechte krefteclich,
struck so right forcefully,

daz die helde beide sich
that the heroes both themselves

mit valle ergâben ûf den plân.
with fall surrendered onto the meadow.

man unde ros, ros unde man
man and steed, steed and man

mit valle suochten den sant:
with fall sought the sand:

dort lac der hêrre Tristant,
there lay the lord Tristan,

sô lac sîn tjostgeselle hie.
so lay his joust-companion here.

alsolch unprîs in beiden nie
such dishonor to-them both never

zu keinen zîten mê geschach.
at any times more happened.

ist ez unprîs, als ich dâ sprach?
is it dishonor, as I there spoke?

nein ez, zwâr, in keine wîs:
no it, truly, in no way:

ez gap den helden hôhen prîs
it gave the heroes high prize

und was ein ritterlîch geschicht.
and was a knightly happening.

sie enmochten sich gehalden nicht
they might themselves hold not

an den himel noch an die luft.
to the heaven nor to the air.

des touwes risel und sîn tuft
the dew's trickle and its vapor

mochte sie des nicht gehaben wider,
might them of-that not hold back,

sie enmüesten zu der erden nider
unless-they must to the earth down

vallen sunder iren danc.
fall without their thanks.

doch was ir ligen dâ nicht lanc.
yet was their lying there not long.

die ros hin liefen von dem wal,
the steeds away ran from the field,

die vienc dâ beide Kurvenal.
them caught there both Kurvenal.

Die vrechen helde jungen
The bold heroes young

ûf von der erden sprungen
up from the earth sprang

und liefen beide einander an,
and ran both each-other at,

der unverzagete Tristan
the undaunted Tristan

und sîn unkunder strîtgenôz;
and his unknown battle-companion;

ir beider swert der scheiden blôz
their both swords of-the sheaths bare

wurden in den zîten;
became at the time;

sie zucten von der sîten,
they drew from the side,

daz in dar an gesegent was.
what to-them there on blessed was.

getengelt wart daz grüene gras
trampled was the green grass

und ouch die bluomen under in.
and also the flowers under them.

manheit und ritterlîchen sin
manliness and knightly mind

ietweder helt in herzen truoc.
each hero in heart bore.

sie gâben beide einander gnuoc
they gave both each-other enough

des selben, des sie mochten hân;
of-the same, of-which they might have;

niur slege brâchtens ûf den plân;
only blows brought-they onto the meadow;

die teiltens ouch einander mite
those shared-they also each-other with

mit alsô ritterlîchem site,
with so knightly manner,

daz ez got selbe mochte sehen,
that it God himself might see,

ob er wolde âventiure spehen
if he would adventure espy

von sîner crêatiure:
from his creatures:

sie sluogen vlammic viure
they struck flaming fire

einander ûz dem helmen;
each-other out-of the helmets;

man sach gras und melmen
one saw grass and dust

beströuwet mit den vunken;
strewn with the sparks;

ir scharfen swert versunken
their sharp swords sank

ofte in der schilde randen.
often into the shields' rims.

helt helde dô bestanden
hero heroes then withstood

hête unde man manlîchen man;
had and man manly man;

gein ritter ritter ûf den plân
against knight knight onto the meadow

was kumen ritterlîchen gnuoc.
was come knightly enough.

ieslîcher von dem anderen sluoc
each from the other struck

dâ mangen stêlînen rinc.
there many-a steel ring.

nu slahâ slach! nu clingâ clinc!
now slash-ho slash! now clang-ho clang!

ir swert sô suoze erclungen,
their swords so sweetly rang,

daz disen stolzen jungen
that to-these proud young-ones

ir manlîch muot wachsen began.
their manly spirit to-grow began.

des rief in vröuden her Tristan
therefore called in joys sir Tristan

sîn an geborne krîe:
his in born cry:

„Parmenîe! Parmenîe!“
„Parmenie! Parmenie!“

und als er Parmenîe schrê,
and as he Parmenie cried,

nu was ouch strîtes hie nicht mê
now was also of-battle here not more

von disen helden manlich:
from these heroes manly:

sîn kampfgenôz trat hinder sich,
his combat-companion stepped behind himself,

im was die krîe wol bekant;
to-him was the cry well known;

er sluoc in sîne linken hant
he thrust into his left hand

zu dem schilde daz swert,
to the shield the sword,

die zeswen hant der degen wert
the right hand the warrior worthy

ûf racte gein dem Parmenois.
up stretched toward the Parmenian.

dô sprach Tristan der kurtois
then spoke Tristan the courteous

zu sînem strîtgeverten sân:
to his battle-companion then:

„und ist daz ritterlîch getân,
„and is that knightly done,

ritter hübesch und gemeit,
knight courtly and merry,

daz ir mir gebet sicherheit
that you to-me give surrender

und sît noch vrisch und gesunt,
and are still fresh and sound,

wol zu wer und nindert wunt?“
well at defense and nowhere wounded?“

Tristandes strîtgenôz sprach dô:
Tristan's battle-companion spoke then:

„nein, hêrre, ez enist nicht alsô;
„no, lord, it is not so;

ir ruofet Parmenîe:
you call Parmenie:

die wunnenclîche krîe
the delightful cry

mînen vriunt gehœret an,
my friend belongs to,

den liebesten, den ich ie gewan,
the dearest, whom I ever gained,

den ich doch leider nie gesach.“
whom I yet alas never saw.“

der hêrre Tristant dô sprach:
the lord Tristan then spoke:

„ritter guot, nu saget mir,
„knight good, now tell me,

wie ist genant der vriunt, dem ir
how is named the friend, to-whom you

sô rechte holt in herzen sît?“
so rightly loyal in heart are?“

dô sprach der ritter in der zît:
then spoke the knight at the time:

„von Parmenîe Tristant,
„of Parmenie Tristan,

als ist mîn lieber vriunt genant.“
so is my dear friend named.“

ûz stolzem munde sprach Tristan:
out-of proud mouth spoke Tristan:

„lieber vriunt, nu saget an
„dear friend, now say on

durch iuwer tugent, wer sît ir?“
for your virtue, who are you?“

„hêrre, ob irz geloubet mir,
„lord, if you-it believe me,

sô nennet man mich Gâwân.“
so names one me Gawain.“

„Gâwân?“ sprach her Tristân.
„Gawain?“ spoke sir Tristan.

„jâ, hêrre, als ich gesprochen hân.“
„yes, lord, as I spoken have.“

„bêamîs, gentil Gâwân,
„fair-friend, noble Gawain,

sô bin ich dîn vriunt Tristân;
so am I thy friend Tristan;

wol mich, daz ich dich vunden hân!“
well-for me, that I thee found have!“

„Tristan?“ sprach her Gâwân.
„Tristan?“ spoke sir Gawain.

„jâ, lieber vriunt!“ sprach her Tristân.
„yes, dear friend!“ spoke sir Tristan.

Gawain and Tristan ride to Karidol together, and Tristan enters the town in a cape strewn with silver boars. Arthur and his queen seat him at the Round Table. Early one morning Tristan, unrecognized, unhorses Keie and then Dalkors, a knight who had never fallen. Their riderless horses come home, but when Tristan is questioned he says he met no adventure all day. Then Keie trudges in on foot, dripping like a wet felt.

Her Tristan und her Gâwân,
Sir Tristan and sir Gawain,

die zwêne manlîche man,
the two manly men,

ob die nît under in
if they enmity among them

hêten, der was gar dâ hin.
had, it was wholly there away.

die helde stiezen beide
the heroes thrust both

die swert in die scheide;
the swords into the sheath;

den helm ir ieslîcher bant
the helmet of-them each unbound

von dem houbte sân zuhant
from the head straightway at-once

und sturzte in bî sich ûf daz gras.
and toppled it beside himself onto the grass.

vriunt vriunde willekum dô was;
friend to-friend welcome then was;

die lieben mâge lieblich
the dear kinsmen lovingly

mit armen ummeviengen sich.
with arms embraced themselves.

Kurvenal der werde
Kurvenal the worthy

sach alle die gebêrde,
saw all the bearing,

die sie dâ begiengen,
which they there performed,

wie sie sich umbeviengen,
how they themselves embraced,

und dûchte in wesen vriuntlich.
and seemed to-him to-be friendly.

der werde helt erhuob dô sich
the worthy hero raised then himself

mit der ritterlîchen schar
with the knightly company

und reit zu sînem hêrren dar.
and rode to his lord thither.

der wolgemuote Tristant
the well-spirited Tristan

Kurvenâlen sân zuhant
to-Kurvenal straightway at-once

begonde von sînem mâge sagen.
began of his kinsman tell.

die manlîchen, nicht die zagen
the manly, not the cowards

ûf die ros gesâzen wider,
onto the steeds sat again,

gar vriuntlîch mit einander sider
very friendly with each-other afterward

riten sie gein Karidol;
rode they toward Karidol;

ieslîchem tet in herzen wol,
to-each did in heart well,

daz der ander in sîner jugent
that the other in his youth

manlîch mit ritterlîcher tugent
manly with knightly virtue

sô hôhe wirde hête erstriten.
so high worth had won-by-fighting.

Gâwân sprach mit schœnen siten:
Gawain spoke with fair manners:

„vriunt lieber unde mâc Tristan,
„friend dear and kinsman Tristan,

mîn herze vröuden vil gewan,
my heart joys many gained,

dô ich vernam, daz dîn kintheit
when I heard, that thy childhood

gerach dîn werndez herzenleit
avenged thy lasting heart's-sorrow

und daz du manlîch als ein man
and that thou manly as a man

slüege den künic Morgan
slewest the king Morgan

und rêche den vater dînen,
and avengedst the father thy,

den werden Rîwalînen;
the worthy Riwalin;

und dô dîn hant den sic gewan
and when thy hand the victory gained

ab dem grimmen Affricân,
from the grim African,

dem herzogen Morolde,
the duke Morold,

den entorste noch enwolde
whom dared nor would

bî sînen zîten nie kein man
in his times never any man

âne dich mit strîte bestân, 1900
except thee with battle withstand,

des vroute ich innenclîchen mich;
of-that rejoiced I heartily myself;

und dô du slüege sô manlich
and when thou slewest so manly

bî Weisefort in Irlant
at Wexford in Ireland

den mortgiftigen serpant,
the murder-poisonous serpent,

und daz du torste bestân 1905
and that thou daredst withstand

zu Gâles den risen Urgân,
in Wales the giant Urgan,

den man dâ nante li vilûs."
whom one there named the shaggy."

Gâwân reit mit im alsus;
Gawain rode with him thus;

ir kôsen daz was manicvalt
their chatting it was manifold

und wunnenclîch ir tagalt, 1910
and delightful their pastime,

ir beider muot was vröuden vol:
their both spirit was of-joys full:

sus quâmen sie zu Karidol
thus came they to Karidol

vür die wunnenclîchen stat.
before the delightful town.

Tristan Kurvenâlen bat
Tristan Kurvenal bade
und hiez in sîn gesinde gar
and bade him his household wholly
und die ritterlîche schar
and the knightly company
schicken, daz sie schône riten
arrange, that they beautifully rode
vor im nâch vürstlîchen siten.
before him after princely manners.
Kurvenal dâ vor dem tor
Kurvenal there before the gate
die junchêrren schicte vor,
the squires arranged before,
ie zwêne neben einander
ever two beside each-other
in lichter wête glander;
in bright clothing gleaming;
dar nâch sîns hêrren capellân,
there after his lord's chaplains,
sô vil als er der mochte hân;
as many as he of-them might have;
dar nâch die ritterlîche schar.
there after the knightly company.
her Tristan brâchte mit im dar
sir Tristan brought with him thither
widertratz des meien
rivalry of-the May
von mangem werden leien,
from many-a worthy layman,

der dâ gefêgetieret reit
who there adorned rode

und gar rîchlîchen was gecleit
and very richly was clad

in stolze ritterlîche wât.
in proud knightly clothing.

scharlachen gein dem nazzât
scarlet against the nazzat

was nâch ritterlîchen siten
was after knightly manners

den rittern allen an gesniten.
to-the knights all on cut.

ir aller hêrre, her Tristân,
of-them all lord, sir Tristan,

und sîn mâc, der helt Gâwân,
and his kinsman, the hero Gawain,

zallerlest die zwêne riten.
at-the-very-last the two rode.

eine kappen wol gesniten
a cape well cut

die vuorte mîn hêrre her Tristan
that wore my lord sir Tristan

über allem sînem wâpen an;
over all his arms on;

die liez der hêrre machen
that let the lord make

von brûnem scharlachen.
of brown scarlet.

sîn erbezeichen dar ûf lac,
his heir-sign there on lay,

der eber, den der hêrre pflac
the boar, which the lord was-wont

zu vüeren an dem schilde;
to bear on the shield;

des selben tieres bilde
of-the same beast image

was von silber wîz geslagen;
was of silver white beaten;

ûz sînem houbte sach man ragen
out-of its head saw one jut

zwêne zende guldîn:
two tusks golden:

dar an wart offenlîchen schîn,
there by became openly visible,

daz der hêrre ritter was.
that the lord knight was.

die tier geströuwet, als ich las,
the beasts strewn, as I read,

sô dicke wâren ûf die wât,
so thickly were on the clothing,

daz man daz brûne scharlât
that one the brown scarlet

dâ durch ein lützel schînen sach.
there through a little shine saw.

ein huot des hêrren houbtes dach
a hat the lord's head's cover

was, der reisekappen glîch.
was, to-the travel-cape like.

sô schône und alsô vürstlîch
so beautifully and so princely

der hêrre hübesch und gemeit
the lord courtly and merry

durch die stat gein hove reit.
through the town toward court rode.

Ob der stolze Tristan
Whether the proud Tristan

icht wurde nû gekaffet an?
anything was now gaped at?

jâ, daz sage ich iuch vür wâr,
yes, that say I to-you for true,

manch hundert vrouwen giengen dar
many-a hundred ladies went thither

in die venster leinen sich,
into the windows lean themselves,

mit spilenden ougen innenclich
with playing eyes inwardly

blicten sie den hêrren an.
gazed they the lord at.

nû quam ouch her Tristan
now came also sir Tristan

durch die stat hin ûf daz hûs.
through the town thither up-to the house.

der êrenrîche künic Artûs
the honor-rich king Arthur

und sîne massenîe gar
and his household wholly

giengen gein dem hêrren dar.
went toward the lord thither.

der künic mit kusse in schône enpfienc;
the king with kiss him beautifully received;

die küniginne ouch gein im gienc
the queen also toward him went

mit manger vrouwen minnenclîch.
with many-a lady lovely.

der hêrre Tristan wart vriuntlîch
the lord Tristan was friendly

enpfangen von den vrouwen.
received by the ladies.

man mochte an im dâ schouwen,
one might in him there behold,

daz nie kein gast ûf keiner vart
that never any guest on any journey
sô rechte schône enpfangen wart:
so rightly beautifully received was:
der künic und die künigin
the king and the queen
den hêrren vuorten zwischen in
the lord led between them
gar lieplîch in den stunden
very lovingly at the hours
hin zu der tavelrunden
thither to the round-table
und satzten in hêrlîch dar an.
and set him lordly there at.
„ahiu, Parmenois Tristan!“
„ah, Parmenian Tristan!“
sprach dâ manges heldes munt,
spoke there many-a hero's mouth,
„dise wirde in manger stunt
„this worth in many-a hour
hât mit ritterlîchen siten
has with knightly manners
dîn ellenthafte hant erstriten!“
thy valiant hand won-by-fighting!“
die werden tavelrunder
the worthy round-tablers
die vrouten sich besunder,
they rejoiced themselves apart,

daz gemêret wart ir schar
that increased was their company

und gezieret schône gar
and adorned beautifully wholly

mit disem helde hôchgeborn
with this hero high-born

und an manheit ûz erkorn
and in manliness out chosen

vor allen den, die in den tagen
before all those, who in the days

konden hôhen prîs bejagen
could high prize hunt

und die mit ritterlîchen siten
and who with knightly manners

lop und hôhe wirde erstriten.
praise and high worth won-by-fighting.

Her Tristan dâ zu hove was;
Sir Tristan there at court was;

der hof gezieret, als ich las,
the court adorned, as I read,

was wol von sîner edelen tugent;
was well by his noble virtue;

sîn ellenthafte vreche jugent
his valiant bold youth

erwarp dô hôhes prîses vil.
won then of-high prize much.

er stiez der ritterschefte zil
he thrust of-the knighthood goal

sô hô mit rechter manheit,
so high with true manliness,

daz ez mit ritters wirdikeit
that it with knight's worthiness

erreichen konde dâ kein man.
reach could there no man.

swaz ie der man manheit began,
whatever ever the man of-manliness began,

sô was ez ôt her Tristant,
so was it just sir Tristan,

der mit ellenthafter hant
who with valiant hand

sô ritterlîche werc begienc,
so knightly works performed,

daz er daz hôste lop gevienc
that he the highest praise caught

vor allen den tavelrundern.
before all the round-tablers.

iedoch wil ich besundern
yet will I apart

iuch künden, wie sîn manheit
to-you announce, how his manliness

an einem helde prîs erstreit.
on a hero prize won-by-fighting.

der was ein ritter alsô guot
he was a knight so good

und truoc sô manlîchen muot,
and bore so manly spirit,

daz er mit ritterlîchen siten
that he with knightly manners

hête hôhen prîs erstriten.
had high prize won-by-fighting.

er was gevaren in manch lant
he was fared into many-a land

und wart daz nie an im erkant,
and was that never in him recognized,

daz er ie wurde sigelôs;
that he ever became victoryless;

dar umme man den helt erkôs
there for one the hero chose

an der tavelrunder schar;
to the round-tablers' company;

er hête grôze manheit zwâr
he had great manliness truly

begangen in Britânjen lant
performed in Britain's land

und was Dalkors genant.
and was Dalkors named.

Dalkors bone schevelier
Dalkors good knight

der was ein ritter alsô fier,
he was a knight so fierce,

swen er nicht ritterschefte pflac,
whenever he not knighthood practiced,

sô mochte er den selben tac
so might he the same day

keiner vröuden gepflegen.
no joys practice.

eines morgens reit der degen
one morning rode the warrior

gar vruo nâch âventiure.
very early after adventure.

Tristan der helt gehiure
Tristan the hero gentle

ouch nâch âventiure reit.
also after adventure rode.

Keie, als dise âventiure seit,
Keie, as this adventure says,

ouch sîne wâpen leite an sich
also his arms laid on himself

und reit ûz gar ritterlich
and rode out very knightly

und manich tavelrunder.
and many-a round-tabler.

ieslîcher reit besunder
each rode apart

aleine suochen ritterschaft.
alone to-seek knighthood.

Dalkors der degen ellenthaft
Dalkors the warrior valiant

ûf dem velde sâ zuhant
on the field straightway at-once

sîn zimier von dem helme bant,
his crest from the helmet unbound,

daz er mit ritters handen
that he with knight's hands

dester ê bestanden
the sooner withstood

wurde in der âventiure tan;
would-be in the adventure forest;

wen in getorste nicht bestân
for him dared not withstand

kein ritter, dem er was bekant:
no knight, to-whom he was known:

sîn muot, sîn ellenthafte hant,
his spirit, his valiant hand,

die hêten im den prîs erkrigen.
they had to-him the prize won.

der rede sî nu hie geswigen
of-the speech be now here silent

und hœret, wie her Tristan
and hear, how sir Tristan

und Keie einander quâmen an.
and Keie each-other came at.

Ez was vruo vor der sunnen schîn;
It was early before the sun's shining;

des mochte ez nicht sô licht gesîn, 2060
therefore might it not so light be,

daz ein man den anderen man
that one man the other man

mochte erkennen in dem tan
might recognize in the forest

oder gespehen mochte schier
or espy might quickly

schilt oder helmes zimier.
shield or helmet's crest.

in der tunkel quam Tristan 2065
in the darkness came Tristan

unde Keie einander an;
and Keie each-other at;

ûf einander sie dâ triben;
on each-other they there drove;

ir beider sper ganz dâ bliben,
their both spears whole there remained,

doch wart gestochen Tristant
yet was thrust Tristan

sô krefticlîch von Keien hant, 2070
so forcefully by Keie's hand,

daz die strâle guldîn
that the arrow golden

hin drête von dem helme sîn.
away turned from the helmet his.

her Tristan ouch gedâchte dô
sir Tristan also thought then

an dem rennen: „stich in hô,
at the charge: „thrust him high,

sô prellet er verre.“ daz geschach:
so bounces he far.“ that happened:

her Tristan in mit kreften stach
sir Tristan him with strength thrust

rechte ûf den bart under den helm,
right on the beard under the helmet,

Keie der viel in den melm;
Keie he fell into the dust;

sîn ros lief hin gein Karidol.
his steed ran away toward Karidol.

sunder rede konde ez wol
without speech could it well

und âne sage sâ zustunt
and without telling straightway at-once

der massenîe machen kunt
to-the household make known

âne wortlîch verjehen,
without wordy declaring,

waz sînem hêrren was geschehen.
what to-his lord was happened.

Keie lac vortoubet,
Keie lay stunned,

mit molden gar bestoubet
with dust wholly bedusted

dort ûf der âventiure plân.
there on the adventure meadow.

vürbaz reit her Tristân
further rode sir Tristan

nâch niuwer âventiure hin.
after new adventure away.

nu enweste ir ieglîches sin
now knew of-them each's mind

nicht umb ein hâr, als ich dâ las,
not about a hair, as I there read,

under in, wer der ander was:
among them, who the other was:

dirre, der prîslîch besaz,
this-one, who praiseworthily sat,

und gener, der den anger maz
and that-one, who the meadow measured

mit der langen venjen dort.
with the long prostration there.

der rechten ritterschefte ein hort
of-the true knighthood a hoard

und aller tugende fundamint,
and of-all virtue foundation,

Tristan, Rîwalînes kint,
Tristan, Riwalin's child,

reit in der selben wîle
rode in the same while

kûme eine welsche mîle,
barely a French mile,

dô quam in ritterlîchen an
then came him knightly at

Dalkors ûf einem grüenen plân,
Dalkors on a green meadow,

der ritter, von dem ich ê sprach
the knight, of whom I before spoke

und im mit rede lobes jach.
and to-him with speech praise declared.

Dalkors unde Tristant
Dalkors and Tristan

einander wâren unbekant,
to-each-other were unknown,

die ûz erwelten helde fier;
the out chosen heroes fierce;

ieglîcher kein zimier
each no crest

vuorte ûf sînem helme dô;
bore on his helmet then;

ir schilde wâren ouch alsô
their shields were also so

mit speren stark gerüeret,
with spears strongly stirred,

die varwe alsô zuvüeret,
the color so scattered,

daz die zeichen dar an
that the signs there on

nicht mochte erkennen wol ein man.
not might recognize well a man.

Die ros sie nâmen mit den sporn;
The steeds they took with the spurs;

hurtlîch die helde hôchgeborn
vigorously the heroes high-born

liezen dâ zusamne gân.
let there together go.

der Parmenois Tristân
the Parmenian Tristan

stach mit ellenthafter hant
thrust with valiant hand

ûz dem satel ûf den sant
out-of the saddle onto the sand

Dalkors den ûz erwelten degen;
Dalkors the out chosen warrior;

er pflac dô, des er ê gepflegen
he practiced then, what he before practiced

nie enhête zu keiner stunt:
never had at any hour:

vallen was im ie unkunt,
falling was to-him ever unknown,

daz lernte er hie mit grôzer scham.
that learned he here with great shame.

Tristan sîn ros dâ nicht ennam;
Tristan his steed there not took;

ez lief ôt hin; ez weste ouch wol
it ran just away; it knew also well

stîge und wege gein Karidol;
paths and ways toward Karidol;

ez tet ouch kunt sîns hêrren leit
it made also known its lord's sorrow

ungesungen und ungeseit,
unsung and unsaid,

âne dôn und âne wort.
without tune and without word.

ez wêre bî der krippen dort
it were by the manger there

verre lieber gewesen
far dearer been

wen bî der tjoste hie genesen.
than by the joust here survived.

von danne reit her Tristân
from thence rode sir Tristan

wider ûf den vorderen plân.
back onto the former meadow.

sîne strâlen er dâ vant,
his arrows he there found,

ûf sînen helm er sie dâ bant;
onto his helmet he them there bound;

gein Karidôle reit er sân.
toward Karidol rode he then.

nu wart im vrâge vil getân
now was to-him question much done

umb ietwederen leien,
about each layman,

Dalkorsen unde Keien.
Dalkors and Keie.

im wart schiere kunt getân,
to-him was quickly known done,

daz ir ros beide sunder man
that their steeds both without man

ûf den hof wâren kumen.
onto the court were come.

Tristan sprach: „ich hân vornumen
Tristan spoke: „I have heard

weder diz noch daz, ôt nichtes nicht
neither this nor that, just nothing not

umb ir beider geschicht.
about their both happening.

mir widervuor ouch, als ich sage,
me befell also, as I say,

in alle disem langen tage
in all this long day

nie kein âventiure."
never any adventure."

Tristan der helt gehiure
Tristan the hero gentle

den züchten was gemêze;
to-the breeding was measured;

verswigen und nicht ruomrêze
silent and not boastful

was er aller sîner tât.
was he of-all his deed.

recht adel noch die tugent hât:
true nobility still the virtue has:

swâ adel und tugent entsament sîn,
wherever nobility and virtue together are,

dâ tuot daz adel selden schîn
there does the nobility seldom visible

mit ruomworten sîne tât;
with boast-words its deed;

swer guotes icht begangen hât,
whoever good anything performed has,

man gesaget ez wol, oder swer ez tuot.
one says it well, or whoever it does.

als hête ouch Tristan sînen muot
so had also Tristan his spirit

gesetzet her von kinde.
set hither from child.

er hielt bî dem gesinde
he halted by the household

ûf sînem rosse kôsende;
on his steed chatting;

manch stolzer degen im lôsende
many-a proud warrior to-him listening

was sîner hovelîchen mêr.
was of-his courtly tidings.

inredes trôf Keie her
meanwhile dripped Keie hither

zu vuoze alsam ein nazzer vilz;
on foot like a wet felt;

im was sîns swertes gehilz
to-him was his sword's hilt

dort vallende abe gesprungen.
there falling off sprung.

die alden und die jungen
the old and the young

im alle engegen giengen,
to-him all toward went,

mit schalle sie in enpfiengen.
with noise they him received.

VIII · THE HUNT TOWARD TINTAGEL

The court mocks Keie as he trudges home on foot. At table Arthur suspects Tristan of the jousts, which Tristan denies, and Gawain and Dalkors know nothing. For six weeks no one learns who unhorsed the two knights. Then at Arthur's request Gawain presses Tristan, and at the name of Isolde Tristan admits both jousts. Gawain promises to let him see the queen. He has Arthur's huntsmen drive a hart toward Tintagel, but the hart escapes at nightfall in the forest on Arthur's and Mark's common border.

Er leit von spotte grôze nôt:
He suffered from mockery great distress:

„her Keie, gebt mir daz botenbrôt!"
„sir Keie, give me the messenger's-reward!"

sprach ein ritter under in,
spoke a knight among them,

„zwâr als alt, als ich bin,
„truly as old, as I am,

sô gesach ich iuch, ritter wert,
so saw I you, knight worthy,

gerîten nie sô guot ein pfert,
ride never so good a palfrey,

als ir nu tuot in dirre zît;
as you now do at this time;

ir und iuwer rössel sît
you and your little-horse are

zwâr mit einander geborn."
truly with each-other born."

die rede Keien tet vil zorn.
the speech to-Keie did much anger.

sîn wart gespottet harte vil
of-him was mocked very much

mit grôzem schalle sunder zil
with great noise without limit

und mit schimpfworten scharfen.
and with jest-words sharp.

jâ mochte man eine harfen,
yes might one a harp,

als ich mich rechte kan verstân,
as I myself rightly can understand,

noch minner dâ vernumen hân
still less there heard have

wan in ‚den rûschenden müln'.
than in ‚the rushing mills'.

„Keie ûf sîner muoter vüln
„Keie on his mother's foal

ist gesezzen!" einer sprach.
is sat!" one spoke.

dar nâch aber ein ander jach:
there after again an other declared:

„er rîtet der zwelfboten pfert!"
„he rides the twelve-messengers' palfrey!"

sie sâhen im ouch an daz swert;
they looked to-him also at the sword;

einer vrâgete under in:
one asked among them:

„wâ ist daz gehilze hin
„where is the hilt away

von disem vechtîsen kumen?“
from this fighting-iron come?“

einer sprach: „ich hân vernumen
one spoke: „I have heard

wol, wie ez dar umbe stât:
well, how it there about stands:

gestriten Keie hiute hât
fought Keie today has

und ist im von der hant geslagen!“
and is to-him from the hand struck!“

des grôzen wortes, hôrte ich sagen,
of-the great word, heard I say,

Keie dicke dâ gewuoc,
Keie often there made-mention,

iedoch konde er zu schimpfe gnuoc;
yet could he at jest enough;

er jach: „der tiuvel mir daz riet,
he declared: „the devil me that counseled,

daz ich von hove hiute schiet.
that I from court today parted.

mich bestuont dort in dem tan
me withstood there in the forest

zwâr der tiuvel, nicht ein man;
truly the devil, not a man;

er quam an mich sô hurtlich
he came at me so vigorously

unde stach mir einen stich
and thrust me a thrust

sô starc, sô grimmeclîchen hart,
so strong, so grimly hard,

swaz ich ie gestochen wart,
whatever I ever thrust was,

zwâr daz ist ein wint dâ wider;
truly that is a wind there against;

er stach mich, daz ich vallen nider
he thrust me, that I fall down

muoste unerweret ûf den plân;
must undefended onto the meadow;

und swaz ich ie gevallen hân,
and whatever I ever fallen have,

daz überviel ich hiute zwâr:
that outfell I today truly:

die zeswe huf, die rippe gar,
the right hip, the ribs wholly,

die tuont mir von dem valle wê;
they do me from the fall woe;

ichn viel ôt nie sô harte mê.“
I fell just never so hard more.“

Der künic was zu tische kumen
The king was to table come

durch ezzen und hête ouch vernumen,
for eating and had also heard,

daz Keie entschumpfieret was.
that Keie unhorsed was.

die ritter sâzen, als ich las,
the knights sat, as I read,

und Keie zu der tavelen nider.
and Keie at the table down.

Dalkors der ritter quam ouch sider,
Dalkors the knight came also afterward,

an die tavelen er gesaz.
at the table he sat.

dô nû der künic ein lützel gaz
when now the king a little ate

und in der mâze übernam,
and him to-the measure overtook,

daz in zu redene gezam,
that to-him to speak befitted,

dô vrâgete er Keien mêre,
then asked he Keie tidings,

wer der ritter wêre,
who the knight were,

der in dô hête gevalt.
who him then had felled.

Keie sprach: „hêrre, sîne gestalt
Keie spoke: „lord, his shape

kan ich wêrlîch nicht gesagen.
can I truly not say.

dô ez alrêst begonde tagen,
when it first began dawn,

in der tunkel er mich quam an;
in the darkness he me came at;

ichn kante weder ros noch man,
I knew neither steed nor man,

schilt noch helmes zimier;
shield nor helmet's crest;

doch kôs ich, daz der degen fier
yet saw I, that the warrior fierce

ûf sînem helme vuorte,
on his helmet bore,

dô er mich hurtlîchen ruorte,
when he me vigorously touched,

von clârem golde etiswaz."
of bright gold something."

der künic sprach: „hœres du, Tristan, daz?
the king spoke: „hearest thou, Tristan, that?

zwâr daz muost dû gewesen sîn."
truly that must thou been have."

„nein ich, zwâr, künic hêrre mîn!"
„not I, truly, king lord my!"

sprach dô Rîwalînes barn.
spoke then Riwalin's child.

„mirn ist hiute widervarn
„to-me is today befallen

nie kein âventiure."
never any adventure."

Artûs der künic gehiure
Arthur the king gentle

sprach zu hêrren Gâwân:
spoke to lord Gawain:

„Gâwân, hâst aber dûz getân?"
„Gawain, hast however thou-it done?"

her Gâwân sprach: „künic hêrre, nein."
sir Gawain spoke: „king lord, no."

der tavelrunder dâ dekein
of-the round-tablers there none

von diser âventiure jach.
of this adventure declared.

der künic zu Dalkorsen sprach:
the king to Dalkors spoke:

„Dalkors, bist aber dûz gewesen?"
„Dalkors, hast however thou-it been?"

er jach: „hêrre, ich bin genesen
he declared: „lord, I am survived

ouch hiute kûme vor einer tjost:
also today barely from a joust:

ein ritter vil nâch erlôst
a knight very nearly released

hête von dem lebene mich;
had from the life me;

er stach mich alsô grimmeclich,
he thrust me so grimly,

daz ich viel ûf daz gras.
that I fell onto the grass.

wer ich wêre oder wâ ich was,
who I were or where I was,

daz was mir wêrlîch unkunt
that was to-me truly unknown

lange wîle und lange stunt.
long while and long hour.

mir was der ritter unbekant,
to-me was the knight unknown,

der mich dâ vellete ûf den sant."
who me there felled onto the sand."

Die werden tavelrunder
The worthy round-tablers

die wunderte ie besunder
them wondered ever apart

der seltênen geschicht,
of-the rare happening,

wan im bî sînen tagen nicht
for to-him in his days not

alsulch unprîs was geschehen.
such dishonor was happened.

Tristandes buoch hât mir verjehen,
Tristan's book has to-me declared,

daz in den ritterlîchen scharn
that in the knightly companies

nie kein man konde ervarn,
never any man could find-out,

wer disen ritter ellenthaft
who this knight valiant

mit sô manlîcher kraft
with so manly strength

dar nider het gestochen.
there down had thrust.

diz stuont wol sechs wochen,
this stood well six weeks,

unz der künic zu Gâwân
until the king to Gawain

sprach: „neve lieber, nû sage an
spoke: „nephew dear, now say on

und rât mit rechten triuwen mir,
and counsel with true faithfulness me,

daz ûf ein ende kumen wir,
that to an end come we,

ob mîn neve Tristân
whether my kinsman Tristan

dise âventiure habe getân
this adventure have done

an Dalkorsen dem degen."
on Dalkors the warrior."

Gâwân sprach: „ich hân gepflegen
Gawain spoke: „I have practiced

gein im dar umbe rede vil;
toward him there about speech much;

sô gar vil und âne zil
so very much and without limit

hân ich in gevrâget,
have I him asked,

daz mich sîn halt betrâget;
that me of-it even wearies;

iedoch wil ichz versuochen baz."
yet will I-it try better."

Gâwân eines tages saz
Gawain one day sat

und sîn neve Tristant;
and his kinsman Tristan;

sie tâten einander vil bekant
they made each-other much known

von schœner âventiure.
of fair adventure.

Gâwân der helt gehiure
Gawain the hero gentle

vrâgete in hier under
asked him here among

von Dalkorsen besunder.
of Dalkors apart.

er jach: „bêamîs Tristan,
he declared: „fair-friend Tristan,

mîn vriunt lieber, nû sage an,
my friend dear, now say on,

vergich âne allez kunterfeit
confess without all counterfeit

mir der rechten wârheit,
to-me the true truth,

alse lieb als ich dir bin
as dear as I to-thee am

und dîn vrouwe die künigin."
and thy lady the queen."

Alsiufzende sprach Tristân:
All-sighing spoke Tristan:

„lieber neve mîn Gâwân,
„dear kinsman my Gawain,

welch küniginne meines du?"
which queen meanest thou?"

her Gâwân sprach im aber zu:
sir Gawain spoke to-him again to:

„ich meine die lichtgemâle,
„I mean the bright-painted,

die von Kurnewâle,
the-one of Cornwall,

die über al in Engelant
who over all in England

ist ouch ein künigîn bekant,
is also a queen known,

von Irlant die schœne Isôt.“
of Ireland the fair Isolde.“

„Îsôt, mîner vröuden tôt,
„Isolde, my joys' death,

und Îsôt, mînes lebens leben!
and Isolde, my life's life!

neve, swaz dir nû kumet eben“,
kinsman, whatever to-thee now comes even“,

sprach Tristan, „daz sî geschehen.“
spoke Tristan, „that be happened.“

Gâwân sprach: „du solt verjehen,
Gawain spoke: „thou shalt declare,

stêche dû Dalkorsen nider?“
thrustedst thou Dalkors down?“

Tristan sprach mit züchten sider:
Tristan spoke with breeding afterward:

„zwâr ez geschach und ich gesagez,
„truly it happened and I say-it,

zwêne ritter ich des tages
two knights I of-the day

stach mit ellenthafter hant
thrust with valiant hand

ûz den setelen ûf den sant;
out-of the saddles onto the sand;

ir ros hin liefen in den tan.“
their steeds away ran into the forest.“

zuhant erkante Gâwân
at-once recognized Gawain

bî den rossen, als ich las,
by the steeds, as I read,

daz ez Dalkors und Keie was.
that it Dalkors and Keie was.

Gâwân der jach: „neve mîn,
Gawain he declared: „kinsman my,

woldes aber dû die künigîn,
wouldst however thou the queen,

ob ez mochte dir geschehen,
if it might to-thee happen,

die blunde Isôt icht gerne sehen,
the blonde Isolde at-all gladly see,

la bêle, die schœne Isôt?“
the fair, the fair Isolde?“

„ja“, sprach Tristan, „daz wêre ein tôt
„yes“, spoke Tristan, „that were a death

mîner sorgen vür wâr
of-my cares for true

und aller mîner swêre gar
and of-all my grief wholly

und mîner vröuden êwic leben!
and of-my joys eternal life!

neve, und kondes dû mir geben
kinsman, and couldst thou me give

den rât und ouch die lêre,
the counsel and also the teaching,

daz ich gesêhe die hêre,
that I should-see the noble-one,

mîn trût, mîns herzen künigîn,
my beloved, my heart's queen,

dîn eigen wolde ich immer sîn!“
thy own would I ever be!“

Gâwân sprach: „gehabe dich wol,
Gawain spoke: „bear thyself well,

mit listen ich daz vüegen sol,
with cunning I that contrive shall,

daz dû sie schiere solt gesehen,
that thou her soon shalt see,

und muoz in vröuden daz geschehen;
and must in joys that happen;

des sich ûf mînen eit an mich."
of-that see on my oath to me."

der rede Tristan vroute sich
of-the speech Tristan rejoiced himself

von inneclîchem herzen,
from heartfelt heart,

doch vüegete im niuwen smerzen
yet contrived to-him new pain

ir minneclîche minne,
her lovely love,

der blunden küniginne,
of-the blonde queen,

wan sîn muot und sîn gedanc
for his spirit and his thought

ûf die reise stête ranc.
toward the journey constantly struggled.

Der sinnenrîche Gâwân
The wit-rich Gawain

truoc gar listeclîchen an
arranged very cunningly on

mit dem künige eine jaget.
with the king a hunt.

Tristandes buoch hât mir gesaget,
Tristan's book has to-me said,

daz der künic von Karidol
that the king of Karidol

und der künic von Tintajol,
and the king of Tintagel,

Artûs unde Marke,
Arthur and Mark,

ûf ir beider marke,
on their both march,

dâ ir lant schieden sich,
where their lands parted themselves,

einen walt gar wunnenclich
a forest very delightful

hêten, der ir beider was.
had, which of-them both was.

Gâwân vüegete, als ich las,
Gawain contrived, as I read,

daz der künic Artûs
that the king Arthur

von Karidol ûz sînem hûs
from Karidol out-of his house

reit jagen in den selben walt.
rode hunting into the same forest.

Gâwânes sin was manicvalt
Gawain's mind was manifold

und gar listic sîn gevuoc.
and very cunning his contriving.

gar heimelîche er an truoc
very secretly he arranged on

mit des küniges jagern,
with the king's huntsmen,

daz sie muosten in gewern,
that they must him grant,

swes er sie bat und swaz er hiez.
whatever he them bade and whatever he bade.

der helt Gâwân des nicht enliez,
the hero Gawain of-that not left-off,

ern sprêche zu den jegern:
unless-he spoke to the huntsmen:

„ir meister, ichn wil des nicht enpern
„you masters, I will of-that not forgo

und bite iuch sîn, geloubet mirz,
and ask you of-it, believe me-it,

gevazzet ir vür einen hirz,
take you before a hart,

sô schicket iuwer warte alsô,
so arrange your relays so,

daz ir her nâch sîn werdet vrô
that you here after of-it become glad

und ich iuch immer rîchen sol;
and I you ever enrich shall;

schicket, daz der hirz gein Tintajol
arrange, that the hart toward Tintagel

die richte loufe!“ daz geschach
the straight-way run!“ that happened

rechte als er wolde unde sprach.
right as he would and spoke.

Sie liezen zu einem hirze dô;
They let-loose at a hart then;

die jager ire warte alsô
the huntsmen their relays so

besatzten, wan sie kondenz wol,
manned, for they could-it well,

daz der hirz gein Tintajol
that the hart toward Tintagel

die richte des gevertes lief.
the straight-way of-the course ran.

Tristâns gelücke dâ nicht slief,
Tristan's luck there not slept,

im gelucte dise vart
for-him succeeded this journey

gar wol, als ich bescheiden wart.
very well, as I informed was.

der hirz lief vor den hunden hin
the hart ran before the hounds away
durch sînes lebenes gewin
for his life's gain
und durch sîns lîbes hinkunft.
and for his body's escape.
ern was nicht in der rechten brunft;
he was not in the true rut;
im selbe zu vrumen, nicht zu schaden
to-him self to benefit, not to harm
was er noch nicht überladen
was he still not overladen
mit vleische zu der stunde;
with flesh at the hour;
die überkrupften hunde
the overfed hounds
mochten im nicht gehaben an.
might him not hold on.
der künic Artûs und sîne man
the king Arthur and his men
mit jageten in widerstrît
with hunted in rivalry
wol hin nâch der vesperzît,
well away after the vesper-time,
unz daz ez halt gar âbent was.
until that it even wholly evening was.
der hirz den hunden, als ich las,
the hart from-the hounds, as I read,
gar unerloufen entwart;
very un-run-down escaped;
sie vermisten ouch der vart;
they missed also of-the track;

die jager und die hunde
the huntsmen and the hounds

sich in der selben stunde
themselves at the same hour

geloubten der vorlornen jaget,
gave-up the lost hunt,

als mir die âventiure saget
as to-me the adventure says

und ich rechte vernumen habe,
and I rightly heard have,

wan die nacht treip sie dar abe.
for the night drove them there off.

ir hornzeichen hornten sie,
their horn-signals horned they,

daz sie zusamne brâchte hie.
that them together brought here.

Gawain persuades Arthur to lodge with Mark, rides ahead, and obtains Mark's peace for Tristan. Mark receives Arthur with great honor. At table the queen and Tristan exchange glances, hers secret with the eyes and open with the heart. At night Mark sets a block of twelve scythes before Isolde's door to catch Tristan.

Dô sie zusamne wâren kumen,
When they together were come,

der künic, als ich hân vernumen,
the king, as I have heard,

sprach zu den jagern sâ zuhant:
spoke to the huntsmen straightway at-once:

„saget an, ist iuch der walt bekant,
„say on, is to-you the forest known,

sô kündet âne lügen mir
so announce without lies to-me

ûf iuwer triuwe: wâ sîn wir,
on your faithfulness: where are we,

wie verre ist gein Karidol?“
how far is toward Karidol?“

„daz kan ich iuch gesagen wol“,
„that can I to-you say well“,

sprach ein jeger under in,
spoke a huntsman among them,

„wol siben mîle dâ hin
„well seven miles there away

hab wir, hêrre, in iuwer hûs.“
have we, lord, to your house.“

„entriuwen“, sprach künic Artûs,
„in-truth“, spoke king Arthur,

„die reise wirt uns alzu swâr;
„the journey becomes for-us all-too heavy;

und sul wir dise nacht gar
and shall we this night wholly

in der vinster über rîten?“
in the darkness across ride?“

Gâwân der sprach in den zîten:
Gawain he spoke at the time:

„wir sîn der reise vil wol vrî,
„we are of-the journey very well free,

Tintâjol ist hie nâhen bî.“
Tintagel is here near by.“

„Tintâjol?“ sprach der künic Artûs.
„Tintagel?“ spoke the king Arthur.

„jâ, hêrre, in iuwers ôhems hûs
„yes, lord, to your uncle's house

habet ir nicht verre, wizzet daz.“
have you not far, know that.“

der künic sprach: „bescheide mich baz,
the king spoke: „inform me better,

wie verre dar doch müge sîn.“
how far thither yet may be.“

„kûme eine mîle, hêrre mîn,
„barely one mile, lord my,

hab wir ûf die burc al dar,
have we to the castle all thither,

daz wizzet sicherlîch vür wâr;
that know surely for true;

hêrre, wolt ir volgen mir,
lord, would you follow me,

sô sulen dar kêren wir.“
so shall thither turn we.“

sus des getriuwe Gâwân sprach.
thus the faithful Gawain spoke.

„der künic schaffet uns guot gemach,
„the king makes for-us good comfort,

der êrenrîche Marke,
the honor-rich Mark,

der ie begerte starke,
who ever desired strongly,

daz im daz heil müeste geschehen,
that to-him the fortune must happen,

daz er iuch zu einem mâle gesehen
that he you at one time see

dâ heime solde in sînem hûs.“
there at-home should in his house.“

„wie rêtes dû den?“ sprach Artûs.
„how counselest thou then?“ spoke Arthur.

„hêrre, dâ sul wir kêren dar;
„lord, there shall we turn thither;

her wirt sîn vrô, wizzet vür wâr.
he becomes of-it glad, know for true.

êret in dâ mite.“ sprach Gâwân.
honor him there with.“ spoke Gawain.

der künic sprach: „nu hât Tristân
the king spoke: „now has Tristan

des küniges Marken hulde nicht.“
of-the king Mark's favor not.“

„daz trûwe ich schiere hân bericht,“
„that trust I quickly to-have settled,“

sô sprach der edele Gâwân.
so spoke the noble Gawain.

„wie doch?“ sprach der künic sân.
„how yet?“ spoke the king then.

„Hêrre, dâ lât mich rîten vor
„Lord, there let me ride before

und rîtet nâch ûf mînem spor;
and ride after on my track;

ê ir denne nâch sît kumen,
before you then after are come,

sô hân ich einen vride genumen
so have I a peace taken

und beteidinget dar în
and included there in

alle, die hie mite iuch sîn.
all, who here with you are.

ich weiz wol, daz der künic begert
I know well, that the king desires

der iuweren kunft und mich gewert."
of-the your coming and me grants."

den künic die rede dûchte guot.
to-the king the speech seemed good.

hin reit der degen hôchgemuot
away rode the warrior high-spirited

und quam gein Tintajôle snel.
and came toward Tintagel quickly.

und als er ûf daz castel
and when he onto the castle

durch daz vorbürge quam,
through the outer-bailey came,

der künic schiere daz vernam,
the king quickly that heard,

daz her Gâwân kumen was;
that sir Gawain come was;

er enpfienc in schône, als ich las.
he received him beautifully, as I read.

her Gâwân seite im dise mêr:
sir Gawain told him these tidings:

„mîn ôhem rîtet dort her,
„my uncle rides there hither,

von Britânje künic Artûs,
of Britain king Arthur,

und wil herbergen hie zu hûs."
and will lodge here at house."

der künic Marke sprach sân:
the king Mark spoke then:

„schimpfes dû nicht, Gâwân?“
„jestest thou not, Gawain?“

er jach: „ich rede ez sunder schimpf
he declared: „I speak it without jest

und âne schimpfes ungelimpf:
and without jest's discourtesy:

er ist hie gar nâhen bî
he is here very near by

und lêt iuch biten, ob ieman sî
and lets you ask, if anyone be

bî im und mit im kumen her
with him and with him come hither

und ob er iuwer hulde enper,
and if he your favor forgo,

daz der selbe iuweren vride habe.“
that the same your peace have.“

der künic sprach: „dâ rede nicht abe:
the king spoke: „there speak nothing off:

Artûs der liebe vriunt mîn
Arthur the dear friend my

sol gote willekumen sîn
shall to-God welcome be

und mir und sol nâch wirtes siten
and to-me and shall after host's manners

hie gebieten und nicht biten.“
here command and not ask.“

Der edele künic Marke
The noble king Mark

der vroute sich dô starke,
he rejoiced himself then strongly,

daz er hête vernumen,
that he had heard,

daz in sîn hûs solde kumen
that to his house should come

der hôhe künic, der edele gast,
the high king, the noble guest,

der küniclîcher tugende last
who of-kingly virtue's burden

dâ vor allen künigen truoc.
there before all kings bore.

des vroute sich dô Marke gnuoc
of-that rejoiced himself then Mark enough

und was sîn inneclîchen vrô.
and was of-it heartily glad.

der hêrre Gâwân kêrte dô
the lord Gawain turned then

gein dem künige Artûse wider
toward the king Arthur back

und seite im die wârheit sider,
and told him the truth afterward,

daz sîn gesinde und sîne man
that his household and his men

alle solden vride hân
all should peace have

des küniges dâ von Kurnewal.
of-the king there of Cornwall.

des vrouten sie sich über al
of-that rejoiced they themselves over all

durch Tristanden eine.
for Tristan alone.

inredes der reine
meanwhile the pure

künic dort zu Tintajol
king there at Tintagel

hiez schône und küniclîchen wol
bade beautifully and kingly well

ummehengen sînen sal
hang-around his hall

mit sperlachen über al,
with sheets over all,

die glesten glanz von golde fin.
which gleamed bright of gold fine.

mit tiuwern tepichen sîdîn
with precious carpets silken

wart der estrich beleit
was the floor laid

und rôsen vil dar ûf gespreit;
and roses many there on spread;

die tische wurden ouch gericht:
the tables were also prepared:

dâ gebrach des alles nicht,
there lacked of-that all nothing,

daz man dâ heizet wirtschaft
which one there calls hospitality

und daz mit grôzer êren kraft
and which with great honor's power

mac haben ein künic in sînem hûs.
may have a king in his house.

inredes der künic Artûs
meanwhile the king Arthur

zu dem bürgetor reit în;
to the castle-gate rode in;

der künic und die künigîn
the king and the queen

die hêten sich sô schône
they had themselves so beautifully

gesprenzet under crône
adorned under crown

und sô prîslîch an geleit
and so praiseworthily on laid

in alsô küniclîche cleit,
in so kingly garments,

daz ich von ir wête clâr
that I of their clothing bright

leider nicht gereden entar; 2540
alas not speak dare;

wan mir gebricht sîn an der kunst;
for to-me lacks of-it in the art;

mîn kranker sin, mîn unvernunst
my weak mind, my unreason

gestaten mir zu reden nicht.
allow me to speak not.

doch was die wât sô rîcher pflicht,
yet was the clothing so of-rich kind,

daz mich sîn immer wundert. 2545
that me of-it ever wonders.

kerzen wol zwei hundert
candles well two hundred

truoc man dâ dem künige vor
bore one there the king before

und Isôten gein dem tor.
and Isolde toward the gate.

der künic Artûs, als ich las,
the king Arthur, as I read,

gesezzen von dem rosse was. 2550
dismounted from the steed was.

Vür wâr die kerzen truogen
For true the candles bore

mit züchten und mit vuogen
with breeding and with propriety

ritter und juncvrouwen.
knights and young-ladies.

swer ez nu wolde schouwen,
whoever it now would behold,
der sach, daz künic Artûs
he saw, that king Arthur
enpfangen wart in Marken hûs
received was in Mark's house
nâch küniclîchen êren.
after kingly honors.
mit kusse enpfienc den hêren
with kiss received the lord
der künic und die künigin.
the king and the queen.
Tristan und Gâwân trâten hin
Tristan and Gawain stepped away
von dem kusse hinder sich;
from the kiss behind themselves;
iedoch wart Tristan minnenclich
yet was Tristan lovingly
enpfangen dâ mit ougen.
received there with eyes.
Isôt erblickete in tougen
Isolde glanced-at him secretly
und sach in mit vorchten an.
and looked him with fears at.
iedoch getorste Tristan
yet dared Tristan
sie nicht wider envollen an sehen:
her not back fully at look:
er vorchte künic Marken spehen,
he feared king Mark espy,
wan sîne list was im wol kunt.
for his cunning was to-him well known.
die künege beide sâ zustunt,
the kings both straightway at-once,

die künegîn und die vrouwen gar
the queen and the ladies wholly

gemeineclîch an einer schar
together in one company

hin ûf giengen in den sal.
away up went into the hall.

man gap in wazzer über al,
one gave them water over all,

zu tische sie dâ satzten sich.
at table they there set themselves.

ob ich nu selbe sûme mich
if I now self delay myself

und sage von ir wirtschaft vil,
and tell of their hospitality much,

war zu sol daz? gar âne zil
for what shall that? wholly without limit

ist sulcher rede vor mir gesaget
is such speech before me said

und von den meistern nicht verdaget,
and by the masters not kept-silent,

die bezzer wâren, dan ich bin.
who better were, than I am.

künic Marke und ouch die künigin
king Mark and also the queen

gesetzet hêten küneclich
set had kingly

den künic Artûs zwischen sich.
the king Arthur between themselves.

her Tristan und her Gâwân
sir Tristan and sir Gawain

die sâzen beide wol hin dan
they sat both well away thence

an einer anderen tavelen ort
at an other table's end

gerichte gein dem künige dort.
facing toward the king there.

Zwivalt, als ich hôrte jehen,
Twofold, as I heard declare,

sô was der küniginne sehen,
so was the queen's seeing,

des herzen und der ougen:
of-the heart and of-the eyes:

der ougen sehen was tougen,
the eyes' seeing was secret,

des herzen sehen was offenbâr;
the heart's seeing was open;

mit ougen tougen sach sie dar,
with eyes secretly looked she thither,

Isôt die künegîn kurtois,
Isolde the queen courteous,

und gruozte dort den Parmenois.
and greeted there the Parmenian.

gar selden aber daz geschach,
very seldom however that happened,

daz sie mit ougen in an sach,
that she with eyes him at looked,

wan sie vorchte starke,
for she feared strongly,

daz der künic Marke
that the king Mark

begonde ir sehen spehen;
began her seeing espy;

aber ires herzen sehen
but her heart's seeing

konde ir vorbieten wîp noch man,
could her forbid woman nor man,

dâ mit sach sie ôt alles an
there with looked she just all at

ir zartez liep Tristande.
her tender love Tristan.

ir sehen was zweier hande,
her seeing was of-two kinds,

daz sie mit den ougen tet:
which she with the eyes did:

ie swan sie die state het,
ever when she the chance had,

sô schôz sie mit ir ougen brehen
so shot she with her eyes shining

Tristande hin ein vriuntlîch sehen,
to-Tristan thither a friendly look,

und was daz sehen tougen.
and was the looking secret.

daz ander sehen ir ougen,
the other looking of-her eyes,

daz was mit züchten offenbâr
that was with breeding open

unde warf ez spilnde dar
and threw it playing thither

ûf den künic Artûs,
onto the king Arthur,

der dâ was gast in irme hûs.
who there was guest in her house.

sie blickete ouch underwîlen an
she glanced also at-times at

den künic Marken iren man
the king Mark her husband

und was daz blicken kunterfeit,
and was the glancing counterfeit,

als mir die âventiure seit:
as to-me the adventure says:

ir ougen spilen, ir vriuntlîch sehn
her eyes' playing, her friendly look

daz wêre lieber geschehn
that were more-gladly happened

hin ûf den Parmenois Tristan
away onto the Parmenian Tristan

wen ûf irn êlîchen man.
than onto her wedded husband.

ir herzen sehen, ob sich daz icht
her heart's seeing, whether itself that at-all

dô teilte? nein ez wêrlîch nicht,
then divided? no it truly not,

ezn was nindert denne dort
it was nowhere except there

an der anderen tavelen ort,
at the other table's end,

dâ Tristan saz, ir bêamîs.
where Tristan sat, her fair-friend.

und er getorste in keine wîs
and he dared in no way

mit den ougen offenbâr
with the eyes openly

geblicken noch gesehen dar
glance nor look thither

ûf die künigîn Isôt;
onto the queen Isolde;

des leit sîn herze grôze nôt
for-that suffered his heart great distress

von glüender minne smerzen.
from glowing love's pain.

er sach doch mit dem herzen
he looked yet with the heart

stête und eineclîche dar;
constantly and solely thither;

und sie die küneginne clâr
and she the queen bright

sach in vor unde sider
looked him before and after

an mit ganzem herzen wider.
at with whole heart back.

ir herzen sehen hin und her
their hearts' seeing thither and hither

gienc spilnde under in entwer
went playing between them across

von im gein ir, von ir gein im.
from him toward her, from her toward him.

leser dises buoches, vernim:
reader of-this book, hear:

ir herzen blicke in dem sal
their hearts' glances in the hall

hin und her rechte als ein bal
hither and thither right as a ball

giengen, dâ die kint mite
went, there the children with

spilen nâch kintlîchem site.
play after childish manner.

doch wâren sie des spiles nicht kint,
yet were they of-the game not children,

sie hêten sîn vor unde sint
they had of-it before and since

gespilt und spilten sîn noch vil
played and played of-it still much

und was ir allerbeste spil,
and was their very-best game,

daz spil und noch ein ander spil,
that game and still an other game,

dâ von ich nû nicht sprechen wil.
there of I now not speak will.

Dô man nû zu hove gaz,
When one now at court ate,

künic Marke weste vil wol, daz
king Mark knew very well, that

der künic Artûs müede was;
the king Arthur weary was;

er hiez im in dem palas
he bade for-him in the palace

betten und den anderen gar,
bed-make and the others wholly,

die mit im kumen wâren dar.
who with him come were thither.

der künic Artûs lac eine,
the king Arthur lay alone,

und dar nâch ie gemeine
and there after ever together

zwêne und zwêne lâgen,
two and two lay,

die mit einander pflâgen
who with each-other practiced

slâfes, als ich vernumen hân.
sleep, as I heard have.

her Tristan und her Gâwân
sir Tristan and sir Gawain

sich leiten an ein bette dô.
themselves laid on a bed then.

ez stuont zwischen in alsô,
it stood between them so,

daz sie selden schieden sich;
that they seldom parted themselves;

mit einander lieplich
with each-other lovingly

sie sich begiengen, als ich las,
they themselves conducted, as I read,

und swaz ir eines wille was,
and whatever of-them one's will was,

daz widersprach der ander nicht,
that gainsaid the other not,

als under vriunden noch geschieht.
as among friends still happens.

Dô sich die geste geleit
When themselves the guests laid

hêten, nû was ouch bereit
had, now was also ready

der künic und die künegin
the king and the queen

und giengen ouch zu bette hin.
and went also to bed away.

in des küniges palas
in the king's palace

eine kemenâte was
a chamber was

gebûwet schône und hêrlich,
built beautifully and lordly,

dar în legeten sie sich.
there into laid they themselves.

der künic eines siten pflac,
the king a custom practiced,

daz er besunderen eine lac.
that he apart alone lay.

wâ von daz quême, wer weiz daz?
where from that came, who knows that?

ez was lîchte umb den alden haz,
it was likely about the old hatred,

den er truoc zu der künigin.
which he bore toward the queen.

Isôten was ein bette hin
for-Isolde was a bed thither

gemachet an die anderen want.
made at the other wall.

diz was Tristande wol bekant
this was to-Tristan well known

und hête im die gelegenheit
and had to-him the situation

von ende zu ende geseit
from end to end told

ein urkleinez kindelîn,
an utterly-little child,

daz was sun der muomen sîn
that was son of-the kinswoman his

und was Tantrîsel genant;
and was Tantrisel named;

Tristan ez dâ bî Marken vant.
Tristan it there by Mark found.

list wider list hie vunden ist.
cunning against cunning here found is.

künic Marke vant ouch einen list;
king Mark found also a cunning;

er truoc den alden arcwân
he bore the old suspicion

gein sînem neven Tristân
toward his nephew Tristan

swêrlîch in sînem herzen noch:
heavily in his heart still:

er het geheizen ein bloch
he had commanded a block

bereiten, der listige man,
prepare, the cunning man,

zwelf sensen hiez er dar an
twelve scythes bade he there on

al umb und umbe machen,
all around and around make,

glîch scharfen scharsachen.
like sharp razors.

daz bloch mit listen wart bereit
the block with cunning became prepared

und wart ouch listiclîch geleit
and was also cunningly laid

vür daz gadem, dâ sie lac
before the chamber, where she lay

die künegîn und slâfes pflac.
the queen and of-sleep practiced.

oder vil lîchte slief sie nicht?
or very likely slept she not?

sie lac doch in der geschicht,
she lay yet in the situation,

als ob sie slâfen solde,
as if she sleep should,

und Marke wênen wolde.
and Mark suppose would.

Tristan goes to the queen, cuts himself on the scythes, and leaves blood on the bed and the floor. Gawain sees the danger to them all. Keie proposes that every guest cut himself too, and they stage a pillow fight with their kings' war cries, each cutting himself on the block; Gawain shoves Keie onto it. Arthur excuses the noise to Mark.

Dô sie nû gelâgen
When they now lay

und alle slâfes pflâgen,
and all of-sleep took-care,

Tristanden und die schœne Isôt
Tristan and the fair Isolde

begonde twingen ir erbenôt.
began force their inherited-distress.

ir nôt was die minne,
their distress was the love,

die twanc ir beider sinne,
which forced their both senses,

Tristanden dort, Isôten hie.
Tristan there, Isolde here.

in ir herzen gedâchte sie:
in her heart thought she:

„torste ez gewâgen Tristân,
„dared it venture Tristan,

daz er zu mir wolde gân,
that he to me would go,

daz wêre mîner vröuden hort."
that were of-my joys hoard."

nu lac ouch Tristan aldort,
now lay also Tristan yonder,

gedenkende unde trachtende,
thinking and pondering,

mit allen sinnen achtende,
with all senses heeding,

wie er zu ir quême dar,
how he to her should-come thither,

sô daz sîn nieman würde gewar.
so that of-him no-one would-become aware.

drîvalt bedâchte er sîne nôt:
threefold considered he his distress:

„wâge ichz, sô wirt die schœne Isôt
„venture I-it, so becomes the fair Isolde

in dem lande über al
in the land over all

aber der liute muntschal;
again of-the people mouth-talk;

mîn ôhem der künic Marke
my uncle the king Mark

der wirt erzürnet starke,
he is angered strongly,

und sîn vriunt der künic Artûs,
and his friend the king Arthur,

der hie ist gast in sînem hûs,
who here is guest in his house,

wirt sîn betrüebet inneclich,
is of-it saddened inwardly,

swie ez quême halt umb mich."
however it came even about me."

er bedâchte ez allez gar;
he considered it all wholly;

iedoch stuont im daz herze dar,
yet stood to-him the heart thither,

sîn muot und al sîns herzen sin,
his spirit and all his heart's mind,

dâ sie dort lac die künegin.
where she there lay the queen.

waz half ez, daz er Tristan
what helped it, that he Tristan

was aller dinge ein manlîch man?
was of-all things a manly man?

die sigehafte minne,
the victorious love,

die sicbehalderinne,
the victory-keeper,

die zôch in überwunden hin:
she drew him overcome away:

er muoste ôt zu der künegin.
he must just to the queen.

Tristan stuont ûf und gienc aldar.
Tristan stood up and went thither.

nu was die leide hâlschar
now was the grievous trap

gerichte im in den wec geleit,
straight to-him in the way laid,

daz bloch, dâ er sich an versneit.
the block, where he himself on cut.

die sensen scharf verschrieten in,
the scythes sharp cut him,

daz heize bluot ran von im hin
that hot blood ran from him away

vaste ûf des sales estrich.
hard onto the hall's floor.

Tristan erquam des inneclich
Tristan was-startled of-it inwardly

und leit zwivalten smerzen,
and suffered twofold pain,

des lîbes und des herzen:
of-the body and of-the heart:

die minne in herzen mit im ranc;
the love in heart with him wrestled;

des lîbes smerze, der in twanc,
the body's pain, which him forced,

daz wâren vrische wunden.
those were fresh wounds.

nu wolde er an den stunden
now would he at the hours

hin wider an daz bette gân
back again to the bed go

zu sînem vriunde hern Gâwân:
to his friend sir Gawain:

nu enliez in nicht die minne,
now let him not the love,

die bluote im in dem sinne,
which bloomed to-him in the mind,

ir glüenden vunkel in dâ müen
her glowing sparks him there vex

begonden und in herzen glüen,
began and in heart glow,

sîn herze in glüender minne bran.
his heart in glowing love burned.

ei, wie tet nu her Tristan?
ah, how did now sir Tristan?

sîn hemde er umb sîn wunden bant,
his shirt he around his wounds bound,

an die tür gienc er zuhant
to the door went he at-once

der kemenâten, dâ sie lac
of-the chamber, where she lay

die künegîn, und er bewac
the queen, and he resolved

sich, daz er rüeren began
himself, that he to-touch began

gar senfteclîchen dar an,
very gently there on,

er clopte gar gemechlich.
he knocked very softly.

daz hôrte Isôt und verstuont sich,
that heard Isolde and understood herself,

daz ez wêre ir vriunt Tristân.
that it were her friend Tristan.

sie stuont ûf von dem bette sân,
she stood up from the bed then,

die minnenglüende künegîn,
the love-glowing queen,

und liez ir bêamîsen în,
and let her fair-friend in,

den minnegernden Tristan,
the love-desiring Tristan,

der ouch in ir minne bran.
who also in her love burned.

die zwei gelieben lieplich
the two lovers lovingly

legeten an daz bette sich.
laid on the bed themselves.

ich weiz ez sunder vrâgen
I know it without asking

wol, wes sie dâ nu pflâgen.
well, what they there now practiced.

swaz ê von jagen ist gesaget,
whatever before of hunting is said,

daz ist ein wicht: Tristan erjaget
that is a nothing: Tristan hunted-down

hête an der küneginne
had in the queen

daz wâre wilt der minne,
the true game of-the love,

daz er selbe âne hunde erlief;
which he himself without hounds ran-down;

der künic allez daz verslief.
the king all that slept-through.

Dô nû her Tristan gelac
When now sir Tristan lay

und kurzewîle vil gepflac
and pastime much practiced

mit der küneginne clâr,
with the queen bright,

dô enpfant er unde wart gewar,
then perceived he and became aware,

der minnewunde degen vruot,
the love-wounded warrior wise,

daz von sîner wunden bluot
that from his wounds blood

lîlachen, golter, diz und daz
sheets, quilt, this and that

in dem bette wâren naz
in the bed were wet

und daz des sales estrich
and that the hall's floor

mit bluote het geverwet sich.
with blood had colored itself.

dâ von leit er pînlîche nôt
there from suffered he painful distress

und sprach alsus: „mîn schœne Isôt,
and spoke thus: „my fair Isolde,

mîn trôstlîch trôst, mîn sunneschîn
my comforting comfort, my sunshine

und allerliebeste vrouwe mîn,
and very-dearest lady my,

ich muoz in disen leiden
I must in these sorrows

aber von dir scheiden,
again from thee part,

ê unser minne tougen gar
before our love's secret wholly

der künic mîn ôhem werde gewar."
the king my uncle become aware."

er stuont ûf und gienc hin wider
he stood up and went back again

zu Gâwân und leite sich nider
to Gawain and laid himself down

zu im an daz bette dar.
to him on the bed thither.

Gâwân schiere wart gewar,
Gawain quickly became aware,

daz Tristan was von bluote naz;
that Tristan was with blood wet;

er jach: „neve, wie kumt daz?
he declared: „kinsman, how comes that?

sage mir, waz ist dir geschehen?"
tell me, what is to-thee happened?"

Tristan der wârheit im verjehen
Tristan the truth him declare

begonde von der künegin,
began of the queen,

und wie die scharfen sensen in
and how the sharp scythes him

hêten jêmerlîch versniten.
had miserably cut.

Gâwân mit leideclîchem siten
Gawain with sorrowful manner

ûz siufzendem herzen sprach:
out-of sighing heart spoke:

„owê, owê und immer ach!
„alas, alas and ever ah!

wie des küniges Marken list
how of-the king Mark's cunning

uns nû zu schaden kumen ist!
for-us now to harm come is!

uns enwolle got selbe rât geben,
us unless-will God self counsel give,

sô hân verloren wir daz leben
so have lost we the life

alle, beide dirre und der,
all, both this-one and that-one,

die mit dem künige quâmen her."
who with the king came hither."

Artûs der künic tugende vol
Arthur the king of-virtues full

erhôrte ir beider rede wol
heard their both speech well

und wart dar umb betrüebet gar.
and was there for saddened wholly.

die anderen wurden ouch gewar
the others became also aware

der geschichte über al,
of-the happening over all,

die mit in lâgen in dem sal:
who with them lay in the hall:

von herzen sie erquâmen,
from heart they were-startled,

dô sie die mêre vernâmen;
when they the tidings heard;

under den gesten ir ieglich
among the guests of-them each

vor dem tôde vorchte sich.
before the death feared himself.

sie gâben alle ein ander rât
they gave all one another counsel

umb Tristandes missetât.
about Tristan's misdeed.

in was ouch guotes râtes nôt,
to-them was also of-good counsel need,

wan sie vorchten den tôt;
for they feared the death;

umb die sorcsamen bürden,
about the care-laden burden,

wie sie der entladen würden,
how they of-it unburdened were,

sie rieten hin, sie rieten her.
they counseled thither, they counseled hither.

Keie vernam ouch dise mêr;
Keie heard also these tidings;

er quam zu disem râte
he came to this counsel

in zît und nicht zu spâte:
in time and not too late:

„pfûch!“ sprach er, „daz sô wîsen rât
„pah!“ spoke he, „that so wise counsel

ein hôher künic nicht enhât,
a high king not has,

als ir sît, künic hêrre mîn,
as you are, king lord my,

der sîne wîsheit nu schîn
who his wisdom now visible

tête an disen dingen,
should-make in these things,

sô cleinen und sô ringen!
so small and so slight!

hât wol mîn herze wîsheit,
(if)-has well my heart wisdom,

die dunket iuch doch kunterfeit.
it seems to-you yet counterfeit.

swie tump ich sî, nu enruochet ir,
however foolish I be, now not-care you,

und wolt ir alle volgen mir,
and would you all follow me,

her künic und swer hinne sî,
sir king and whoever herein be,

ich mache uns diser sorgen vrî
I make us of-these cares free

mit vuocheit und mit spêher list."
with cleverness and with artful cunning."

künic Artûs sprach in der vrist:
king Arthur spoke at the time:

„Keie, ich weiz wol, daz wîsheit
„Keie, I know well, that wisdom

und wîsen rât dîn herze treit;
and wise counsel thy heart bears;

swenne dû ez kêren wilt in guot,
whenever thou it turn wilt to good,

nu rât, zierlîcher degen vruot,
now counsel, elegant warrior wise,

daz wir von disen sorgen kumen;
that we from these cares come;

des muost du immer haben vrumen."
of-that must thou ever have benefit."

Keie het listigen muot.
Keie had cunning spirit.

er jach: „dunket ez iuch alle guot,
he declared: „seems it to-you all good,

sô mache wir ein gewuofe,
so make we an outcry,

einen schal und ein geruofe
a noise and a shouting

und rumpeln under einander gar,
and tumble among each-other wholly,

sô loufe ieglîcher dar
so run each thither

zu dem bloche listiclich
to the block cunningly

und versnîde selbe sich.
and cut self himself.

swenne des der künic wirt gewar,
whenever of-that the king becomes aware,

daz wir sîn versniten gar,
that we are cut wholly,

sô enhât er keinen arcwân
so has he no suspicion

zu sîner swester sun Tristân."
toward his sister's son Tristan."

diser mêre vroute sich
of-these tidings rejoiced himself

der künic Artûs innenclich
the king Arthur inwardly

und dankete Keien sâ zustunt,
and thanked Keie straightway at-once,

daz er sô listigen vunt
that he so cunning find

in allen vant zu trôste,
for-them all found as comfort,

der sie von sorgen lôste.
which them from cares released.

die helde dancten alle
the heroes thanked all

Keien dô mit schalle.
Keie then with noise.

sie stuonden ûf über al,
they stood up over all,

die dâ lâgen in dem sal;
who there lay in the hall;

sie begonden sich rottieren,
they began themselves band,

als ob sie turnieren
as if they joust

wolden in der selben zît.
would at the same time.

vil geschallet und geschrît
much noised and cried

wart in des küniges muoshûs.
was in the king's dining-hall.

der edele künic Artûs
the noble king Arthur

tœrischte mit den anderen;
fooled with the others;

rumpeln unde wanderen
tumble and wander

muoste er mit in hin und her,
must he with them hither and thither,

in dem muoshûse entwer
in the dining-hall across

toben unde vaste wüeten;
rage and hard storm;

sie wurfen sich mit hüeten,
they threw-at each-other with hats,

mit küssen und mit polstern;
with cushions and with bolsters;

strûchen und holstern
stumble and clatter

begondens über die bette;
began-they over the beds;

sie wurfen dâ zu wette,
they threw there for wager,

der die hosen, der den schuoch;
this-one the hose, that-one the shoe;

vil hemde und etlîch ander tuoch
many shirts and many-a other cloth

die wurden dâ zurizzen gar,
they were there torn wholly,

der man dar nâch unsanfte enpar,
which one there after uncomfortably did-without,

dô dirre turnei zurgie;
when this tourney broke-up;

der künige krîe riefen sie:
the kings' cry called they:

„Britânje hie, hie Karidol!
„Britain here, here Karidol!

hie Kurnewal, hie Tintajol!"
here Cornwall, here Tintagel!"

sie vüegeten daz mit kündekeit,
they contrived that with cleverness,

daz ieglîcher sich versneit,
that each himself cut,

wan Keie, der in gap den rât,
except Keie, who them gave the counsel,

der volante nicht der tât:
he completed not the deed:

er wolde sich mit listen
he would himself with cunning

vor den sensen vristen.
from the scythes preserve.

dô begreif in Gâwân
then seized him Gawain

und stiez in krefticlîch dar an,
and thrust him forcefully there on,

daz er in den stunden
that he at the hours

enpfienc die grœsten wunden,
received the greatest wounds,

die indert einer in dem sal
which anywhere one in the hall

hête under den gesten über al.
had among the guests over all.

Dô nu Keien wart kunt,
When now to-Keie became known,

daz er was sô grôzlîch wunt,
that he was so greatly wounded,

sâ zuhant sô rief er:
straightway at-once so called he:

„hât uns der tiuvel brâcht dâ her?
„has us the devil brought there hither?

wes wênet dirre künic, wes?
what supposes this king, what?

in dunket lîchte und wênet des,
him seems likely and supposes of-that,

daz wir wilde wolve sîn.
that we wild wolves are.

ich spreche ez ûf die triuwe mîn,
I speak it on the faithfulness my,

ern hât nicht küniclîcher siten,
he has not kingly manners,

er hât gemachet, daz wir versniten
he has made, that we cut

uns alle haben in den tôt.“
ourselves all have into the death.“

künic Marke erhôrte Keien nôt;
king Mark heard Keie's distress;

er hête ouch ê gehôrt vil wol,
he had also before heard very well,

daz der sal was schalles vol;
that the hall was of-noise full;

von sînem bette er zu in gie
from his bed he to them went

und begonde strâfen sie
and began rebuke them

umb die grôzen unzucht.
about the great unseemliness.

Artûs die küniclîche vrucht
Arthur the kingly fruit

entredte sie hübeschlîch hie mite,
excused them courteously here with,

er jach: „ez ist ir ellîch site,
he declared: „it is their constant custom,

ichn kan die ungehiuren
I can the monstrous

der unzuchte nicht gestiuren;
of-the unseemliness not restrain;

sie toben rechte alsam die kint,
they rage right like the children,

dâ heime und hie und swâ sie sint."
there at-home and here and wherever they are."

Artûs der reine guote
Arthur the pure good-one

sluoc Marken ûz dem muote
struck to-Mark out-of the spirit

dise unzucht und her Tristân
this unseemliness and sir Tristan

bleip von im âne arcwân.
remained by him without suspicion.

der künic gienc an sîn bette wider
the king went to his bed back

unde leite sich dâ nider.
and laid himself there down.

die ûzeren geste in dem sal
the outer guests in the hall

ir wunden bunden über al,
their wounds bound over all,

und sâ zuhant ir ieglich
and straightway at-once of-them each

wider an sîn bette legete sich.
back on his bed laid himself.

XI · THE ESCAPE FROM THE STAKE

Mark sees every guest wounded and forgives Tristan at Arthur's asking. When Arthur leaves, the lovers are betrayed. Mark feigns a journey, takes them in bed, and condemns Isolde to the fire and Tristan to the wheel. Tinas wins Tristan leave to pray in a chapel, and he leaps from its window into the river, joins Kurvenal, kills the magistrate, and carries Isolde off into the forest.

Des morgens, dô der tac erschein,
In-the morning, when the day appeared,

sie stuonden ûf; ir aller bein
they stood up; of-them all legs

wâren versniten unde wunt,
were cut and wounded,

ieglîcher hinkende an der stunt
each limping at the hour

und wunder von dem bette gie.
and wondrously from the bed went.

Tristandes zeichen vuorten sie
Tristan's sign bore they

mit smerzen alle gemeine
with pain all together

ieglîcher an dem beine.
each on the leg.

des wart betrüebet starke
of-that was saddened strongly

der edele künic Marke
the noble king Mark

und bat Artûsen sînen gast,
and bade Arthur his guest,

daz er nicht vîntlîchen last
that he not hostile burden

gein im dar umb entrüege.
toward him there about should-bear.

Artûs der was gevüege
Arthur he was courteous

und vant ouch in kurzer vrist
and found also in short time

durch Tristanden einen list,
for Tristan a cunning,

er jach: „vriunt, wiltu, daz ich dich
he declared: „friend, wilt-thou, that I thee

gewere, sô gewere ouch mich
grant, so grant also me

einer bete, der ich bite
a request, which I ask

dich in vriuntlîchem site."
thee in friendly manner."

künic Marke sprach: „mîn vriunt Artûs,
king Mark spoke: „my friend Arthur,

ir sît hie gast in mînem hûs,
you are here guest in my house,

nicht enbitet, wan gebietet mir!"
not ask, but command me!"

dô sprach Artûs: „sô sult ir
then spoke Arthur: „so shall you

iuweren zorn genzlîchen lân
your anger wholly let-go

gein iuweren neven Tristân."
toward your nephew Tristan."

Marke tet alsam ein man,
Mark did like a man,

der im wol êren selber gan,
who to-himself well honors self grants,

und sprach: „ob mir Tristant
and spoke: „if to-me Tristan

mîn neve mit sîn eines hant
my nephew with his one hand

al mîne mâge hête erslagen,
all my kinsmen had slain,

die wolde ich durch iuch verclagen:
them would I for you cease-to-mourn:

Tristan, sun der swester mîn,
Tristan, son of-the sister my,

sol aber in mînen hulden sîn."
shall again in my favor be."

waz hilfet, ob ich lenge daz?
what helps, if I lengthen that?

Artûs daz mâl mit Marken az;
Arthur the meal with Mark ate;

er nam urloup und reit von dan:
he took leave and rode from thence:

bî Marken bleip her Tristan.
with Mark remained sir Tristan.

Owê, owê! der minnetranc
Alas, alas! the love-drink

die gelieben aber twanc,
the lovers again forced,

Tristanden und die blunde Isôt,
Tristan and the blonde Isolde,

daz sie von minne liden nôt;
that they from love suffered distress;

der herzenliebe smerze
the heart's-love's pain

der twanc ir beider herze,
it forced their both hearts,

des mannes und des wîbes.
of-the man and of-the woman.

Tristan Isôten lîbes
Tristan of-Isolde's person

wolde aber gewaldic werden,
would again in-power become,

mit swelcher hande gebêrden
with of-whatever kind bearings

er ez gevüegen kunde.
he it contrive could.

Tantrîsel er begunde
to-Tantrisel he began

vür legen alle die tougen sîn;
before lay all the secrets his;

und swaz er gein der künigîn
and whatever he toward the queen

daz kint mit triuwen werben hiez,
the child with faithfulness to-woo bade,

Tantrîsel des nicht enliez:
Tantrisel of-that not left-off:

ez warp ez unde konde ez wol,
it wooed it and could it well,

wan ez was kündikeite vol
for it was of-cleverness full

und was Isôten heimelîch;
and was to-Isolde intimate;

von im wurden listiclîch
by it were cunningly

ir beider tougen verholn.
their both secrets concealed.

alsus wart Marken abe gestoln
thus was from-Mark off stolen

aber vil der êren sîn.
again much of-the honors his.

Tristan und die künegîn
Tristan and the queen

die triben ir aldez erbespil
they drove their old inherited-game

unde pflâgen des sô vil,
and practiced of-it so much,

dâ von ein niuwer muntschal
there from a new mouth-talk

wart in dem hove über al.
became in the court over all.

swie verswigen Tantrîsel was,
however silent Tantrisel was,

ezn half sie doch nicht, als ich las.
it helped them yet not, as I read.

die werlt uns urkunde gît,
the world to-us testimony gives,

daz der biderbe sunder nît
that the upright-one without envy

gar selden blîbet, swâ der ist:
very seldom remains, wherever he is:

als wart geniden in der vrist
so was envied at the time

der êrengernde Tristan
the honor-desiring Tristan

ouch von etlîchem man,
also by some man,

der sînem lebene schâchte
who his life robbed

und Marken zu ôren brâchte
and to-Mark to ears brought

ir tougen und ir minne,
their secrets and their love,

sîn und der küneginne.
his and the queen's.

Nu wart der künic Marke
Now was the king Mark

erzürnet aber starke
angered again strongly

und truoc den alden arcwân
and bore the old suspicion

gein sînem neven Tristân
toward his nephew Tristan

mit leideclîchem smerzen
with sorrowful pain

swêrlîch in sînem herzen
heavily in his heart

und was stêtes achtende,
and was constantly heeding,

gedenkende unde trachtende
thinking and pondering

in herzen und in sinne,
in heart and in mind,

ob er die küneginne,
whether he the queen,

die blunde Isôten ûz Irlant,
the blonde Isolde from Ireland,

und sînen neven Tristant
and his nephew Tristan

mit einander vunde,
with each-other should-find,

sô daz er über wunde
so that he over should-win

sie beide mit der wâren tât.
them both with the true deed.

nu quam er genzlîch an den rât,
now came he wholly to the counsel,

daz er Tristande tet bekant,
that he to-Tristan made known,

er wolde in Britânjen lant
he would into Britain's land

rîten zu dem künige Artûs,
ride to the king Arthur,

und jach: „Tristan, lâz dir mîn hûs
and declared: „Tristan, let to-thee my house

und mîn gesinde enpfolhen sîn
and my household entrusted be

und pflic des ûf die triuwe dîn,
and take-care of-it on the faithfulness thy,

wan ich des wol getrûwe dir,
for I of-that well trust thee,

du haldes dîne triuwe an mir."
thou holdest thy faithfulness to me."

der künic dô bereitet wart
the king then readied was

gar listeclîchen ûf die vart;
very cunningly for the journey;

er reit mit listen manicvalt
he rode with cunning manifold

bî Tintajol in einen walt
by Tintagel into a forest

und was dar inne unz an die nacht.
and was there in until to the night.

die bœsen nîder ungeslacht
the evil enviers base

Tristandes hête er bî Tristan
of-Tristan had he with Tristan

aldâ zu Tintajol gelân,
there at Tintagel left,

die offenten im ein pfortelîn;
they opened to-him a little-gate;

der künic zu der bürge sîn
the king to the castle his

quam wider und wart în gelân.
came back and was in let.

nû was ouch her Tristân
now was also sir Tristan

gegangen zu der künegin
gone to the queen

in die kemenâten hin
into the chamber thither

und hête sich enpfettet;
and had himself undressed;

im was ouch wol gebettet,
to-him was also well bedded,

er wânte ligen âne vâr.
he thought to-lie without danger.

nû quam ouch der künic dar
now came also the king thither

und mit im alle sîne man,
and with him all his men,

die er dâ bî im mochte hân:
whom he there by him might have:

die tür er mit gewalt ûf stiez,
the door he with force open thrust,

als sîn zorn riet unde hiez,
as his anger counseled and bade,

und vienc Tristan den neven sîn
and caught Tristan the nephew his

und mit im die künegîn,
and with him the queen,

sîn êlîch wîp, die schœne Isôt.
his wedded wife, the fair Isolde.

owê der schemelîchen nôt,
alas the shameful distress,

die dise zwei gelieben liden!
which these two lovers suffered!

ir hende bant man in mit widen
their hands bound one to-them with withies

und mit riemen starke;
and with straps strongly;

ouch hiez sie legen Marke
also bade them lay Mark

in einen vinstern kerker.
into a dark dungeon.

aldâ lac sie, dâ lac ouch er,
there lay she, there lay also he,

unz daz der lichte tac erschein.
until that the bright day appeared.

der künic des morgens wart inein,
the king in-the morning became resolved,

daz er an daz gerichte saz
that he at the judgment sat

und hiez offenlîchen daz
and bade openly that

kunden in dem lande,
announce in the land,

man solde Tristande
one should Tristan

verterben und die künegin.
destroy and the queen.

nu quam zu dem gerichte hin
now came to the judgment thither

von dem lande manic man
from the land many-a man

und der getriuwe von Litan,
and the faithful-one of Litan,

der êrenrîche Tinas,
the honor-rich Tinas,

der ganzer vriunt Tristandes was
who whole friend of-Tristan was

mit triuwen in dem herzen gar,
with faithfulness in the heart wholly,

der quam ouch zu gerichte aldar.
he came also to judgment thither.

Nu vuorte man sie beide vür
Now led one them both before

nach des küniges willekür,
after the king's will,

Tristanden und die künegin;
Tristan and the queen;

ir hende wâren gebunden in.
their hands were bound to-them.

die schemelîche smâheit
the shameful disgrace

was inneclîch von herzen leit
was inwardly from heart grievous

Tinâsen dem getriuwen man,
to-Tinas the faithful man,

den man dâ nante von Litan,
whom one there named of Litan,

der truchsêze des küneges was.
who steward of-the king was.

er bat den künic, als ich las,
he bade the king, as I read,

durch got und durch die êre sîn,
for God and for the honor his,

daz er die edelen künegîn
that he the noble queen

und sîner swester sun Tristân
and his sister's son Tristan

nicht alsô gebunden stân
not so bound stand

vor dem gerichte lieze
before the judgment should-let

und durch sîn adel hieze
and for his nobility should-bid

in ûf lœsen ire bant.
to-them up loose their bonds.

der künic schiere wart gemant
the king quickly was reminded

ir adels und ir hôhen art
of-their nobility and their high birth

und hiez ûf lœsen mit der vart
and bade up loose with the speed

von iren handen die bant.
from their hands the bonds.

swaz mir die âventiure bekant
whatever to-me the adventure known

hât getân, daz muoz ich sagen:
has made, that must I say:

der künic begonde selbe clagen
the king began self accuse

unde sprach in an den lîp.
and spoke them at the life.

nu wart vorteilet man und wîp,
now was condemned man and woman,

Tristan und sîn trût Isôt,
Tristan and his beloved Isolde,

die müesten lîden den tôt:
they must suffer the death:

Isôte, Isolden geburt,
to-Isolde, of-Isolde's birth,

der wart erteilet die hurt,
to-her was adjudged the hurdle,

und dem getriuwen Tristan,
and to-the faithful Tristan,

der untriuwe nie gewan
who faithlessness never gained

in dem reinen herzen sîn
in the pure heart his

alsam ein hirsenkornelîn,
as-much-as a millet-grain,

dem wart erteilet daz rat.
to-him was adjudged the wheel.

Tinas alweinende bat
Tinas all-weeping bade

den künic umb den neven sîn
the king about the nephew his

und umb die blunde künegîn,
and about the blonde queen,

daz er durch got sie lieze leben.
that he for God them should-let live.

ezn half ôt nicht, sie muosten geben
it helped just not, they must give

ir leben umb die minne.
their life for the love.

nu wart die küneginne
now was the queen

und ir lieber vriunt Tristân
and her dear friend Tristan

vür die stat gevüeret sân
before the town led then

hin gein dem plân mit riuwen,
away toward the meadow with grief,

dâ man die ungetriuwen
where one the faithless

zu verterbenne pflac.
to destroy was-wont.

ûf des wazzers stade lac
on the water's bank lay

an dem wege ein capelle;
by the way a chapel;

der wart her Tristan snelle
of-it became sir Tristan quickly

in sînen nœten gewar.
in his distresses aware.

er bat, daz man in vüerte dar,
he bade, that one him should-lead thither,

durch daz er sîner sünden sich
so that he of-his sins himself

gein gote erclagete inneclich.
toward God should-confess inwardly.

die in gevangen vuorten dâ,
who him captive led there,

die versageten im daz sâ
they refused him that then

und vuorten ungevuoclîch in
and led roughly him

vaste gein dem rade hin.
hard toward the wheel away.

Der truchsêze Tinas,
The steward Tinas,

der im sô holt in herzen was,
who to-him so loyal in heart was,

der quam inredes geriten
he came meanwhile ridden

und hôrte Tristanden biten,
and heard Tristan ask,

und daz im jene versageten
and that him those refused

und vaste gein im bâgeten.
and hard against him quarreled.

der getriuwe von Litân
the faithful-one of Litan

sprach: „ir sult in lâzen gân
spoke: „you shall him let go

durch mînen willen hin în
for my will thither in

und sul wir alle hüeten sîn
and shall we all guarding be

vor der capellen hie."
before the chapel here."

swes er dâ jach, des volgeten sie,
whatever he there declared, that followed they,

wan bî dem künege sîn gewalt
for with the king his power

was michel unde manicvalt.
was great and manifold.

her Tristan in daz kirchel gienc.
sir Tristan into the little-church went.

ob er nu wîslîch an gevienc
whether he now wisely on began

sîn dinc, wêrlîch des was im nôt,
his affair, truly of-that was to-him need,

wan er het gewis den tôt.
for he had certain the death.

ein venster an dem kirchel was.
a window in the little-church was.

nu ergienc daz sprichwort, als ich las:
now came-true the proverb, as I read:

swem got wol, dem nieman übel.
to-whom God well, to-him no-one ill.

under dem venster ein hübel
under the window a mound

was ob eines tôten grap.
was over a dead-man's grave.

Tristande got zu sêlden gap,
to-Tristan God to blessing gave,

daz die ûzeren nicht gewar
that the outer-ones not aware

wurden, daz er gienc aldar;
became, that he went thither;

der Parmenois, des küneges mâc,
the Parmenian, the king's kinsman,

viel durch daz venster in den wâc
fell through the window into the wave

und swam daz wazzer hin zu tal.
and swam the water away to valley.

Tantrîsel unde Kurvenal
Tantrisel and Kurvenal

in getriuwelîchem siten
in faithful manner

wâren vür die stat geriten
were before the town ridden

in sulcher hoffenunge,
in such hope,

ob Tristan der junge,
if Tristan the young,

geborn ûz vürsten kunne,
born from princes' kin,

mit keiner list entrunne,
with any cunning should-escape,

daz sie im zu hulfe quêmen dar.
that they to-him to help should-come thither.

nu wart her Tristan ir gewar,
now became sir Tristan of-them aware,

alvliezende in dem wazzer;
all-floating in the water;

ern was der lider nicht lazzer
he was of-the limbs not slacker

und swam snellîch und gerade
and swam quickly and nimbly

gein sînen vriunden zu dem stade.
toward his friends to the bank.

dô sie ersâhen in nu hie,
when they saw him now here,

wer was vrôer danne sie?
who was gladder than they?

sie hêten mit in brâcht aldar
they had with them brought thither

sîn ros und alle sîn wâpen gar,
his steed and all his arms wholly,

schilt und helm, swert unde sper:
shield and helmet, sword and spear:

nu wart ouch wol gewâpent er.
now was also well armed he.

alsô viuchte und alsô naz
so damp and so wet

her Tristan ûf sîn ros dô saz
sir Tristan onto his steed then sat

und kêrte über daz gevilde
and turned across the open-field

hin vaste gein der wilde;
away hard toward the wilderness;

in einen busch er dâ gehielt,
in a thicket he there halted,

sîn herze grôzer triuwe wielt
his heart great faithfulness wielded

gein der edelen küneginne;
toward the noble queen;

er wolde des ie werden inne,
he would of-that ever become aware,

ob sie dem tôde wêre ergeben
whether she to-the death were given

oder ob sie behielde ir leben.
or whether she kept her life.

nu stuonden jene noch aldort,
now stood those still yonder,

die den tôtlîchen mort
who the deadly murder

solden haben getân
should have done

an dem edelen Tristân;
on the noble Tristan;

sie warten vor der kirchentür,
they waited before the church-door,

wenne her wolde gên her vür.
when he would go hither before.

ez enhalf sie nicht, in was enpfarn
it helped them not, to-them was escaped

der visch mit kreften durch daz garn;
the fish with strength through the net;

her Tristan was entrunnen in.
sir Tristan was escaped them.

sie giengen in die kirchen hin
they went into the church thither

unde suochten hin und her,
and searched hither and thither,

sie vunden nicht. nu dise mêr
they found not. now these tidings

der künic Marke vernam,
the king Mark heard,

in herzen er des swinde erquam
in heart he of-it sharply was-startled

und wart dar umb erzürnet gar;
and was there for angered wholly;

er jach: „nu dar, nu dar, nu dar!
he declared: „now thither, now thither, now thither!

wol ûf alle, die hie sîn,
well up all, who here are,

und jaget nâch dem neven mîn
and hunt after the nephew my

daz wazzer alles hin zu tal!“
the water all away to valley!“

daz volc erhuob sich über al,
the folk rose itself over all,

daz ûf dem velde dâ was;
which on the field there was;

und der getriuwe Tinas
and the faithful Tinas

der muoste jagen ouch mit in,
he must hunt also with them,

der Tristande lieber hin
who Tristan more-gladly away

hête geholfen danne gevangen.
had helped than captured.

Nû diz allez was ergangen,
Now this all was happened,

daz sie von dem mortwal
that they from the murder-place

wâren kumen über al,
were come over all,

nu stuont die bêle blunde Isôt
now stood the fair blonde Isolde

noch in bitterlîcher nôt
still in bitter distress

gevangen bî der glüenden hurt,
captive by the glowing hurdle,

die küniclîche geburt,
the kingly birth,

der ie wîplîche güete
to-whom ever womanly goodness

ûz reinem herzen blüete
out-of pure heart bloomed

alsam ein niuwe rôse clâr
like a new rose bright

und als ein lilje glanzgevar,
and as a lily bright-colored,

die gein der lichten sunnen schîn
which toward the bright sun's shining

alsô wîz und alsô fîn
so white and so fine

blüet schône ûf einem stengel;
blooms beautifully on a stem;

die glîcher einem engel
who more-like an angel

was danne einem wîbe
was than a woman

und an ir zartem lîbe
and in her tender body

was linder den ein zîsel.
was softer than a ground-squirrel.

Tristandes neve Tantrîsel
Tristan's nephew Tantrisel

was von im geriten her
was from him ridden hither

und ervuor gar dise mêr
and learned wholly these tidings

und reit hin wider sâ zustunt
and rode away back straightway at-once

und tet sie Tristande kunt.
and made them to-Tristan known.

alsus wart von im gesaget:
thus was by him said:

„ôhem, der künic dir nâch jaget
„uncle, the king thee after hunts

und mit im alle die sîne;
and with him all the his;

Isôt die vrouwe mîne
Isolde the lady my

dort bî der hurt in huote hât
there by the hurdle in guard has

ûz der stat der potestât
out-of the town the magistrate

und ist nieman bî im dâ
and is no-one with him there

wan sîne schergen, und iesâ,
except his bailiffs, and forthwith,

swenne der künic kumt gerant,
whenever the king comes running,

sô wirt mîn vrouwe Isôt verbrant."
so is my lady Isolde burned."

„wirt sie verbrant?" sprach Tristân,
„is she burned?" spoke Tristan,

„nu enwelle got, sint daz ich hân
„now not-will God, since that I have

mîn leben und gesunden lîp,
my life and sound body,

sô brenge ich daz reine wîp
so bring I the pure woman

mit gotes helfe ûz der nôt
with God's help out-of the distress

oder ich gelige mit ir tôt."
or I lie with her dead."

nu wart verbunden im sîn helm,
now was bound to-him his helmet,

er tengete gras und stoubte melm,
he trampled grass and raised-dust dust,

hin reit er gein dem mortwal,
away rode he toward the murder-place,

mit im der werde Kurvenal.
with him the worthy Kurvenal.

zu Tantrîsel sprâchen sie:
to Tantrisel spoke they:

„vil liebez kint, nu blîp alhie,
„very dear child, now stay here,

unz dû besihest, wiez uns ergât."
until thou seest, how-it for-us goes."

hin ranten sie, den potestât
away galloped they, the magistrate

sluoc Tristan der degen vruot
struck Tristan the warrior wise

mit kreften durch den beckelhuot
with strength through the helmet-cap

unz ûf die zungen hin zu tal.
until onto the tongue away to valley.

inredes ouch Kurvenal
meanwhile also Kurvenal

zu tôde zwêne schergen sluoc.
to death two bailiffs struck.

dâ was gesamentes bovels gnuoc,
there was of-gathered rabble enough,

daz lief hin dan und vlôch den tôt.
that ran away thence and fled the death.

sus wart die minneclîche Isôt,
thus was the lovely Isolde,

die man dâ solde tœten,
whom one there should kill,

erlœset von den nœten.
released from the distresses.

vür sich huop sie her Tristant
before himself raised her sir Tristan

ûf sîn ros und reit zuhant
onto his steed and rode at-once

hin wider, dâ Tantrîsel was;
away back, where Tantrisel was;

daz vroute sich, daz sie genas,
that rejoiced itself, that she survived,

Isôt die blunde künigin.
Isolde the blonde queen.

Ei, wâ quâmen sie nu hin?
Ah, where came they now thither?

sie riten ôt vaste in den walt,
they rode just hard into the forest,

ir trachten daz was manicvalt.
their pondering it was manifold.

nu suochten die gehiuren
now sought the gentle-ones

aber die fossiuren,
again the grottoes,

die meister Gotfrit hât genant
which master Gottfried has named

la fossiure a la gent amant,
the grotto for the folk loving,

der minne gruobe, der minne hol,
the love's pit, the love's hollow,

dar inne in vor was sô wol.
there in to-them before was so well.

und sie der nicht envunden,
and they of-them not found,

sie machten an den stunden
they made at the hours

von rinden und von loube,
of bark and of leaves,

ûz schilfe und ûz schoube
out-of reeds and out-of straw-bundles

eine hütte grôz und wît,
a hut great and wide,

dar inne vortriben sie die zît,
there in passed they the time,

die gar getriuwen viere.
the very faithful four.

Mark believes God has saved the lovers, perhaps for their innocence. They live half a year in a hut, fed on game and spring water and above all on love. Mark, hunting alone, finds Isolde gathering flowers with Tantrisel. Pretending not to see him, she laments aloud that Tristan has abandoned her and that liars parted her from her lord. Mark falls at her feet and begs her pardon, and the huntsmen whom his horn calls up marvel at the find.

Nu quam der künic schiere
Now came the king soon
wider unde wart gewar,
back and became aware,
daz die küneginne clâr,
that the queen bright,
la bêle die schœne Isôt,
the fair the fair Isolde,
was entrunnen ûz der nôt.
was escaped out-of the distress.
der edele künic, der guote man
the noble king, the good man
mit vlîze denken began
with diligence to-think began
in sînem herzen reine und fîn:
in his heart pure and fine:
„diz muoz gotes wille sîn,
„this must God's will be,
der hât in zwâr geholfen hin,
he has them truly helped away,
Tristan und der künegin;
Tristan and the queen;
sie geniezen lîchte ir unschult."
they enjoy perhaps their innocence."

von den gedanken er gedult
from the thoughts he patience

unde guoten muot gewan.
and good spirit gained.

wes lebete dâ her Tristan
of-what lived there sir Tristan

und die künegîn Isôt?
and the queen Isolde?

ob sie dâ keiner slachte nôt
whether they there of-any kind distress

von hungere liden? nein sie, zwâr
from hunger suffered? no they, truly

sie hêten guote lîpnar
they had good livelihood

âne brôt und âne wîn;
without bread and without wine;

wiltbrête, sô ez beste sîn
game, as it best be

mochte in dem walde über al,
might in the forest over all,

des schôz in vil dâ Kurvenal;
of-that shot to-them much there Kurvenal;

schône er ez briet unde sôt
beautifully he it roasted and boiled

und lôste sie von hungers nôt
and freed them from hunger's distress

und gap in dar zu lûtertranc;
and gave them there to clear-drink;

ûz einem velse der enspranc;
out-of a rock it sprang;

den trunken die gelieben hie
that drank the lovers here

wêrlîch unde dûchte sie
truly and seemed to-them

der allerbeste welsche wîn,
the very-best Italian wine,

der in den landen mochte sîn.
which in the lands might be.

unde swaz ie her Tristân
and whatever ever sir Tristan

guoter spîse mochte hân
of-good food might have

mit der edelen küneginne,
with the noble queen,

iedoch tet im ir glüende minne
yet did to-him her glowing love

mit rechter herzenliebe baz.
with true heart's-love better.

swaz Tantrîsel dâ gaz
whatever Tantrisel there ate

und Kurvenal, als ichz verstê,
and Kurvenal, as I-it understand,

sô hête eines gerichtes mê
so had of-one dish more

ie der edele Tristan,
ever the noble Tristan,

des besten, daz ieman gewan
of-the best, that anyone gained

und in der werlde mochte sîn,
and in the world might be,

mit der blunden künegîn:
with the blonde queen:

daz was die süeze minne,
that was the sweet love,

die spîsete in herze und sinne,
which fed them heart and mind,

daz sie des dûchte, sie hêten gnuoc
that them of-it seemed, they had enough

des alles, swaz die erde truoc.
of-it all, whatever the earth bore.

Dô sie nu, als ich hân gelesen,
When they now, as I have read,

in dieser wilde gewesen
in this wilderness been

wâren wol ein halbez jâr,
were well a half year,

nû gevüegete ez sich vürwâr,
now contrived it itself for-true,

daz Tristan durch tagalt
that Tristan for pastime

solde rîten in den walt.
should ride into the forest.

Kurvenal der helt gemeit
Kurvenal the hero merry

mit sînem hêrren dô reit.
with his lord then rode.

Isôten und Tantrîsel die
Isolde and Tantrisel those

liezen bî einander sie
left beside each-other they

in der buoden aleine.
in the hut alone.

nur reit Tristan der reine
only rode Tristan the pure

und der werde Kurvenal
and the worthy Kurvenal

den walt alles hin zu tal:
the forest all away to valley:

die schuzzen vasande
they shot pheasants

und vogele mangerhande;
and birds of-many-a-kind;

underwîlen schuzzen sie ein tier.
at-times shot they a beast.

sus riten dise helde fier
thus rode these heroes fierce

in dem walde vaste hin.
in the forest hard away.

die wîle gienc die künegin
the while went the queen

und daz kint Tantrîsel
and the child Tantrisel

und brâchen blüende rîsel
and broke blooming twigs

von manges boumes aste;
from many-a tree's branch;

vil bluomen sie dô vaste
many flowers they then hard

und kriuter ûf sich luoden,
and herbs on themselves loaded,

dâ mite sie ir buoden
there with they their hut

wolden schône zieren,
would beautifully adorn,

beströuwen und flôrieren,
strew and flower,

swenne der edele Tristân
whenever the noble Tristan

quême, daz er solde hân
should-come, that he should have

sîne lust dar inne.
his delight there in.

sus gienc die küneginne
thus went the queen

in dirre kurzewîle
in this pastime

wol eine welsche mîle
well a French mile

von der hütten hin dan
from the hut away thence

bluomen lesende in dem tan.
flowers gathering in the forest.

Die wîle und an den stunden
The while and at the hours

was ouch mit den hunden
was also with the hounds

der künic durch sîn tagalt
the king for his pastime

geriten in den selben walt;
ridden into the same forest;

er het vereinet und verjaget,
he had separated and hunted-away,

als mir die âventiure saget,
as to-me the adventure says,

von den anderen verre sich.
from the others far himself.

die künegîn gar minnenclich
the queen very lovely

die vant er in dem walde dort,
her found he in the forest there,

dô sie der bluomen einen hort
when she of-the flowers a hoard

ûf sich vazzete und ûf sich luot.
on herself gathered and on herself loaded.

der einvaltige künic guot
the simple king good

gedâchte: „hêrre, waz mac diz sîn?
thought: „lord, what may this be?

ist ez Isôt die künegîn?
is it Isolde the queen?

wer hât sie danne brâcht dâ her?“
who has her then brought there hither?“

und alsô gehielt ouch er
and so halted also he

und sach gar eineclîche dar:
and looked very solely thither:

dô wart er rechte gewar,
then became he rightly aware,

daz sie ez was, die schœne Isôt.
that she it was, the fair Isolde.

dô leit er von gedanken nôt,
then suffered he from thoughts distress,

waz er nû tuon möchte,
what he now do might,

daz sînen wirden töchte.
that to-his worth should-avail.

inredes sach sie ouch dar
meanwhile looked she also thither

und wart des küneges gewar,
and became of-the king aware,

daz er sô nâhen bî ir hielt.
that he so near by her halted.

ir herze grôzer liste wielt:
her heart great cunning wielded:

sie gienc vür sich unde tet,
she went before herself and did,

sam sie sîn nicht gesehen enhet.
as-if she him not seen had.

der künic wart ouch nicht gewar,
the king became also not aware,

daz sie het geblicket dar.
that she had glanced thither.

Isôt sprach zu dem kindelîn:
Isolde spoke to the little-child:

„sage an, wie lange mac daz sîn,
„say on, how long may that be,

daz mîn swâger Tristan
that my brother-in-law Tristan

mich sô menlîch als ein man
me so manfully as a man

von dem tôde erlôste,
from the death released,

dô man mich ûf dem rôste
when one me on the grate

solde lesterlîche hân vorbrant?“
should shamefully have burned?“

dem kindelîn was unbekant,
to-the little-child was unknown,

waz die vrouwe meinte;
what the lady meant;

sie winkete im und erscheinte
she winked to-it and showed

mit ir spilnden ougen, daz
with her playing eyes, that

sie weste niuwes etewaz;
she knew new something;

unde nâch der ougen gruoz
and after the eyes' greeting

trat sie dem kinde ûf den vuoz.
stepped she to-the child on the foot.

der künic aller der geschicht
the king of-all the happening

prüefete noch enmercte nicht
tested nor marked not

und nam ir winkens nicht war,
and took of-her winking not heed,

abir ir rede hôrte er gar.
however her speech heard he wholly.

Tantrîsel daz knebelîn
Tantrisel the little-boy

antworte alsus der vrouwen sîn,
answered thus the lady its,

wan iz was kündekeite vol,
for it was of-cleverness full,

und jach: „vrouwe, ir wizzet ez wol
and declared: „lady, you know it well

oder lîchte vil baz dan ich."
or perhaps much better than I."

dô sprach Isôt: „sîn dunket mich
then spoke Isolde: „of-it seems to-me

iezent vil nâch ein halbez jâr."
now very nearly a half year."

daz kint sprach: „vrouwe, ir habet wâr."
the child spoke: „lady, you have true."

sie sprach: „swie gar er Tristan
she spoke: „however wholly sir Tristan

sich aller dinge dunket ein man,
himself of-all things seems a man,

doch tet er an uns als ein zage,
yet did he toward us as a coward,

daz er an dem selben tage
that he on the same day

vor vorchten alsô von uns reit
for fears so from us rode

und uns in diser arbeit
and us in this hardship

hât gelân sô mange zît.
has left so many-a time.

zêter sî über sie geschrît,
woe be over them cried,

die mich und den guoten man
who me and the good man

alsô lesterlîchen hân
so shamefully have

mit ir valschem list vorlogen
with their false cunning lied-about

unde lügenlîch betrogen
and lyingly deceived

gegen dem lieben hêrren mîn,
toward the dear lord my,

dem künige, der mir nicht gesîn
the king, who to-me not be

mochte lieber, den er ist
might dearer, than he is

und ie was in aller vrist,
and ever was in all time,

sint daz ich sînem lîbe
since that I to-his person

gegeben wart zu wîbe.
given was as wife.

nu hânt die trügenêre
now have the deceivers

mich im gemachet unmêre."
me to-him made displeasing."

sie sprach: „Tantrîsel, liebez kint,
she spoke: „Tantrisel, dear child,

mich wundert, daz wir zwei sint
me wonders, that we two are

sô lange aleine hie gewesen
so long alone here been

in dirre wüeste und wir genesen
in this wasteland and we saved

vor manchem wildem tiere sîn
from many-a wild beast are

und daz wir weder brôt noch wîn
and that we neither bread nor wine

noch andere spîse hân gehabet,
nor other food have had,

wan daz wir uns hân gelabet
except that we ourselves have refreshed

mit wazzer und uns hân ernert
with water and ourselves have nourished

mit krûten, die wir hân verzert.
with herbs, which we have consumed.

mîn schepfer, got der süeze,
my creator, God the sweet,

der wil, daz ich hie büeze
he wills, that I here atone-for

mîn sünde in diser wilde
my sin in this wilderness

und daz ich menschen bilde
and that I human image

sol lîchte nimmer mê gesehn,
shall perhaps never more see,

und danke gote, daz geschehn
and thank God, that happened

mir die genâde von im ist,
to-me the grace from him is,

vil liebez kindel, daz du bist
very dear little-child, that thou art

bî mir in diser wüeste hie.“
with me in this wasteland here.“

mit diser rede ersûfzte sie
with this speech sighed she

gar inneclîchen unde sprach
very inwardly and spoke

ûz listigem herzen: „ach!
out-of cunning heart: „ah!

künic Marke, lieber hêrre mîn,
king Mark, dear lord my,

daz wir alsus gescheiden sîn
that we thus parted are

von einander durch lüge
from each-other through lie

und durch valscher nîder trüge!“
and through false enviers' deceit!“

mit diser rede manch heizer zâr
with this speech many-a hot tear

ûz ir spilden ougen clâr
out-of her playing eyes bright

aldâ begonde wallen;
there began well;

sie liez die würze vallen
she let the herbs fall

und die bluomen, die sie truoc,
and the flowers, which she bore,

sie want ir wîzen hende gnuoc
she wrung her white hands enough

und saz nider in den clê.
and sat down in the clover.

Waz sol nu diser rede mê?
What shall now this speech more?

diz sach und hôrte Marke
this saw and heard Mark

und jâmerte in vil starke;
and it-grieved him very strongly;

er het gesworn des einen eit,
he had sworn of-that an oath,

daz die rede icht kunterfeit
that the speech at-all counterfeit

wêre, die er hôrte dâ,
were, which he heard there,

und saz von sînem pferde sâ
and dismounted from his palfrey then

unde lief die richte hin,
and ran the straight-way thither,

dâ sîe saz die künegin;
where she sat the queen;

vür sie viel er ûf sîne knie
before her fell he on his knees

und umbvienc mit armen sie;
and embraced with arms her;

er kuste sie an den rôten munt
he kissed her on the red mouth

und bat sie lieplîch an der stunt,
and bade her lovingly at the hour,

daz sie vergêbe im die schult,
that she should-forgive him the guilt,

daz er in sîner ungedult
that he in his impatience

sie wolde haben getœtet
her would have killed

und daz er sie genœtet
and that he her forced

hête alsô lesterlîche.
had so shamefully.

dô sprach die tugentrîche
then spoke the virtue-rich

Isôt, die blunde künegîn:
Isolde, the blonde queen:

„künic Marke, lieber hêrre mîn,
„king Mark, dear lord my,

vor gote ich iuch vergeben hân,
before God I you forgiven have,

swaz ir mir leides habet getân;
whatever you to-me of-sorrow have done;

ich muoz daz mit urloube jehn:
I must that with leave declare:

und ob daz wêre geschehn
and if that were happened

an mir enlendem wîbe,
to me foreign woman,

daz ir mich von dem lîbe
that you me from the life

âne schult und unverdâcht
without guilt and unsuspected

in iuwerem zorne hêtet brâcht
in your anger had brought

in den schanden und in den schamen,
into the disgraces and into the shames,

zwâr daz wêre iuwerem hôhen namen
truly that would-be to-your high name

doch ein vil cleinez prîsel.“
yet a very small little-prize.“

inredes Tantrîsel
meanwhile Tantrisel

nam des küneges rosses goume
took of-the king's steed heed

unde hielt ez bî dem zoume.
and held it by the bridle.

Marke der künic hôchgeborn
Mark the king high-born

begonde blâsen dô sîn horn,
began blow then his horn,

ob ez ieman vernême,
whether it anyone should-hear,

daz er zu im quême,
that he to him should-come,

von sînem jagetgesinde.
of his hunting-household.

er hürnete alsô swinde
he horned so quickly

und wart sîn hornschal alsô grôz,
and became his horn-sound so great,

daz der walt dâ von erdôz.
that the forest there from resounded.

Der truchsêze Tinas
The steward Tinas

mit sînen jagetgesellen was
with his hunting-companions was

dem künege alsô nâhen kumen,
to-the king so near come,

daz er wol hête vernumen
that he well had heard

sîn hornzeichen und sîn horn;
his horn-signal and his horn;

durch mos, durch distel und durch dorn,
through moss, through thistle and through thorn,

durch holz und über gevilde
through wood and over open-field

quam er in der wilde
came he in the wilderness

nâch des hornes dôz gerant,
after the horn's sound running,

dâ er den künic sitzen vant
where he the king sitting found

bî sîner küneginne.
by his queen.

des nam in in dem sinne
of-that took him in the mind

wunder über wunder
wonder upon wonder

und wunderte besunder
and wondered apart

alle, die mit im quâmen
all, who with him came

und dise mêre vernâmen.
and these tidings heard.

doch vrouten sie gemeineclich
yet rejoiced they together

von inneclîchem herzen sich
from heartfelt heart themselves

des vundes, den sie vunden
of-the find, which they found

hêten in den stunden.
had at the hours.

in wart dâ vröuden mê betaget,
to-them became there of-joys more dawned,

wan ob sie hêten erjaget
than if they had hunted-down

tûsent hirze oder tûsent swîn.
thousand harts or thousand swine.

der künic von der künegîn
the king of the queen

seite in gemeineclîch die mêr,
told them together the tidings,

wie sie hête vunden er
how her had found he

clagende in dem grüenen klê
lamenting in the green clover

und wie im tet von herzen wê
and how to-him did from heart woe

und in erbarmte swinde, daz
and him pitied sharply, that

sie sô clegelîchen saz;
she so lamentably sat;

und swaz er hôrte reden sie,
and whatever he heard speak her,

daz seite er in allen hie,
that told he to-them all here,

und daz allez sô geschach,
and that all so happened,

daz sie des küneges nicht ensach.
that she of-the king not saw.

Tantrisel brings Tristan word that Mark has taken the queen home, and Tristan sends the child back to her and returns to Arundel, but he still leaves his wife a maiden after the year of his vow. Riding out, she steps in a stream that splashes up under her skirts, and she remarks that the water is bolder than Tristan. Kaedin forces the meaning from her and challenges Tristan, who says he can explain.

Die rede lâze wir nu sîn.
The speech let we now be.

der künic nam die künegîn
the king took the queen

und vuorte sie mit im hin wider 3605
and led her with him away back

heim und lebete mit ir sider
home and lived with her afterward

gar minnenclîchen alle vrist.
very lovingly all time.

Tantrîsel mit grôzer list
Tantrisel with great cunning

hête sich hin dan gestoln
had itself away thence stolen

und quam geloufen verholn 3610
and came running secretly

zu der hütten wider hin,
to the hut back thither,

Tristan suochte ez und vant in
Tristan sought it and found him

und was alrêrst der werde
and was first the worthy-one

gesezzen von dem pferde.
dismounted from the palfrey.

und er daz kint aleine sach
when he the child alone saw

kumen, alsiufzende er jach,
come, sighing he declared,

als im sîn triuwe gebôt:
as to-him his faithfulness commanded:

„wâ ist die künegîn Isôt?
„where is the queen Isolde?

vil liebez kint, daz sage mir!“
very dear child, that tell me!“

daz kint sprach: „ôhem, ich sage ez dir:
the child spoke: „uncle, I tell it thee:

ich und Isôt mîn vrouwe,
I and Isolde my lady,

wir giengen in dem touwe
we went in the dew

und lâsen bluomen unde krût,
and gathered flowers and herbs,

dô quam der künic und nam sîn trût.“
then came the king and took his beloved.“

„welch künic?“ sprach er Tristan.
„which king?“ spoke sir Tristan.

„künic Marke, ir êlîcher man,
„king Mark, her wedded husband,

mîn ôhem und der dîne.“
my uncle and the thine.“

„owê der herzenpîne
„alas the heart's-pain

und des leides, des mir ist
and the sorrow, which to-me is

enstanden nû in diser vrist!
arisen now at this time!

sô hât daz minnenclîche wîp
so has the lovely woman

verloren iren zarten lîp,
lost her tender life,

der mîne hant behielt ir leben,
whose my hand kept her life,

dô sie dem tôde was ergeben."
when she to-the death was given."

daz kindel sprach zu im alsô:
the little-child spoke to him so:

„lîeber ôhem, nû bis vrô,
„dear uncle, now be glad,

ir wirret zu dem leben nicht."
to-her ails toward the life nothing."

ez sagete im alle die geschicht,
it told him all the happening,

wie sie des küneges wart gewar
how she of-the king became aware

und wie sie brâchte ir rede dar
and how she brought her speech thither

mit sô hübeschlîcher list
with so courtly cunning

und wie der künic in der vrist
and how the king at the time

ir sô lieplîch engegen lief
to-her so lovingly toward ran

und sie sô vriuntlîch umbeswief
and her so friendly embraced

und alsô guotlîch sie bat,
and so kindly her bade,

daz sie im vergêbe an der stat,
that she him should-forgive on the spot,

swaz er gein ir ie getet;
whatever he toward her ever did;

und wie er nâch der selben bet
and how he after the same request

sie kuste an iren rôten munt.
her kissed on her red mouth.

des wart her Tristan an der stunt
of-that became sir Tristan at the hour

von herzen inneclîchen vrô
from heart inwardly glad

und sprach zu dem kinde alsô:
and spoke to the child so:

„sage an, sach aber der künic dich?“
„say on, saw however the king thee?“

ez sprach: „jâ ôhem, er sach mich
it spoke: „yes uncle, he saw me

und ich hielt im sîn pfert.“
and I held for-him his palfrey.“

„owê!“ sprach der degen wert,
„alas!“ spoke the warrior worthy,

„vüere ich dich danne mit mir hin,
„(if)-lead I thee then with me away,

daz wirt vil lîchte ir ungewin,
that becomes very likely her loss,

der blunden küneginne.
of-the blonde queen.

der künic hât scharfe sinne
the king has sharp senses

und versicht sich unser hie,
and suspects himself of-us here,

sô wirt betrüebet aber sie
so is saddened again she

und kumt die bêle blunde Isôt
and comes the fair blonde Isolde

vil lîchte des in eine nôt.“
very likely from-it into a distress.“

er vuorte daz kindel an ein pfat,
he led the little-child to a path,

daz ez truoc hin gein der stat,
that it bore away toward the town,

und sprach zu im: „nu louf hin în
and spoke to it: „now run thither in

und sage der blunden künegîn,
and tell the blonde queen,

daz sie müeze got bewarn;
that her may God keep;

ich welle in irem dienste varn,
I will in her service fare,

war mich got gelâze."
whither me God lets."

daz kint lief sîne strâze
the child ran its street

hin ûf daz hûs zu Tintajol;
thither up-to the house at Tintagel;

aldâ wart ez enpfangen wol
there was it received well

unde vant dâ mâge und man.
and found there kinsmen and men.

Ei, waz tuot nu her Tristan?
Ah, what does now sir Tristan?

dâ kêrte er aber drâte
there turned he again quickly

mit Kurvenâlis râte
with Kurvenal's counsel

wider ûf den wilden sê
back onto the wild sea

und vuor hin gein Arundelê.
and went away toward Arundel.

und als er quam zu Karke,
and when he came to Karke,

des vrouten sich vil starke
of-that rejoiced themselves very strongly

der herzoge und die herzogîn
the duke and the duchess

und sîn swâger Kâedîn;
and his brother-in-law Kaedin;

und die wîzgehande Isôt
and the white-handed Isolde

gar minnenclîch ez im erbôt:
very lovingly it to-him offered:

die viere gein im giengen
the four toward him went

und in mit kusse enpfiengen.
and him with kiss received.

nû was aber die junge
now was again the young

Isôt in hoffenunge,
Isolde in hope,

daz er ir vröude solde geben
that he her joy should give

und daz er mit ir wolde leben,
and that he with her would live,

als liep mit liebe leben sol.
as love with love live shall.

sie het die zît gemerket wol
she had the time marked well

unde weste ouch daz vür wâr,
and knew also that for true,

daz ein ende het daz jâr
that an end had the year

des gelübdes, daz Tristân
of-the vow, which Tristan

solde haben getân,
should have done,

als er ir hête gesaget,
as he to-her had said,

dô er sô lange sie liez maget.
when he so long her left maiden.

Und aber als ez nacht wart
And again when it night became

und sich geleit die maget zart
and herself laid the maiden tender

hête zu dem manne,
had to the man,

nû lac ôt Tristanne
now lay just to-Tristan

die blunde Isôt in herzen,
the blonde Isolde in heart,

von der er sulchen smerzen
from whom he such pain

in rechter herzenliebe leit,
in true heart's-love suffered,

daz er dise Isôten meit
that he this Isolde shunned

mit werken und mit aller tât,
with works and with all deed,

dâ mite gemachet schiere hât
there with made quickly has

eines jungen degenes lîp
a young warrior's person

ûz einer megde ein schœnez wîp.
out-of a maiden a fair woman.

waz sol ich sprechen mê hie von?
what shall I speak more here of?

her Tristan lac aber als ein ron,
sir Tristan lay again as a log,

als ich hân gesprochen ê.
as I have spoken before.

daz tet der megde in herzen wê
that did to-the maiden in heart woe

und was ir leit und tet ir nôt.
and was to-her sorrow and did to-her distress.

„mich wundert sîn", gedâchte Isôt,
„me wonders of-it", thought Isolde,

„daz der gevüege Tristan
„that the courteous Tristan

nicht zu vrouwenliebe kan
not to lady's-love can

und ist sîn name doch sô grôz
and is his name yet so great

und ist wol aller der genôz,
and is well of-all the peer,

die mit ritterlîchen siten
who with knightly manners

prîs und wirde hân erstriten.
prize and worth have won-by-fighting.

und giht man, swaz die küenen degen
and (if)-says one, whatever the bold warriors

manheit und ritterschefte pflegen,
manliness and knighthood practice,

daz geschehe allez durch die wîp,
that happen all for the women,

sô hât her Tristan sînen lîp
so has sir Tristan his body

wunderlîch unz her verzert,
wondrously until hither spent,

wan im sulches nicht beschert
for to-him such not granted

ist gewesen in keiner vrist,
is been at any time,

daz wîbes lôn geheizen ist,
which woman's reward called is,

wan er den wîben nicht entouc.“
for he to-the women not avails.“

ir selbes sin sie hier an trouc.
her own mind her here on deceived.

swie vil sie der gedanken pflac,
however much she of-the thoughts practiced,

iedoch her Tristan bî ir lac,
yet sir Tristan beside her lay,

daz sie von sînem lîbe
that she by his body

nicht enwart zu einem wîbe,
not became to a woman,

und er lange daz getreip,
and he long that drove,

daz Îsôt alles maget bleip.
that Isolde ever maiden remained.

Nu vüegete ez sich an einem tage
Now contrived it itself on a day

nâch diser âventiure sage,
after this adventure's telling,

daz der herzoge Lovelîn
that the duke Jovelin

und Karsîe die herzogîn
and Karsie the duchess

und Kâedîn Lîfrenîs
and Kaedin Lifrenis

und Isôt Blanschemanîs
and Isolde Blanschemanis

durch kurzewîle riten jagen.
for pastime rode hunting.

sie hiez Tristande sagen
they bade to-Tristan say

und mit vlîze biten in,
and with diligence ask him,

daz er rite mit in dâ hin.
that he should-ride with them there away.

er werte schiere sie der bet,
he granted quickly them the request,

wan er ez doch vil gerne tet.
for he it yet very gladly did.

als sie nu quâmen ûf daz velt,
when they now came onto the field,

Isôten pfert gienc schône in zelt,
Isolde's palfrey went beautifully in amble,

nû reit die kurteise
now rode the courteous-one

bî einer wagenleise;
by a wagon-rut;

dâ was ûz einem brunnen
there was out-of a spring

ein wazzer în gerunnen
a water in run

und bî dem wezzerlîne
and by the little-water

stuonden in lichtem schîne
stood in bright shining

bluomen unde grüenez gras.
flowers and green grass.

Isôt alsô gesitet was
Isolde so mannered was

und was ir ouch gezême gnuoc,
and was to-her also fitting enough,

daz sie stêtes gerne truoc
that she constantly gladly bore

ein vrischez bluomenkrenzelîn
a fresh little-flower-garland

ûf dem gebende sîdîn.
on the headband silken.

und sie die blüemelîn ersach,
when she the little-flowers saw,

nu muget ir hœren, waz geschach:
now may you hear, what happened:

Isôten sie an lachten
to-Isolde they at laughed

und mit ir schîne machten,
and with their shining made,

daz sie von dem pferde trat
that she from the palfrey stepped

und trat gerichte an die stat
and stepped straight to the place

hin, dâ daz wezzerl vlôz.
thither, where the little-water flowed.

daz wazzer von dem trite schôz,
the water from the step shot,

als mir diz buoch gesaget hât,
as to-me this book said has,

der magde hin under ire wât;
of-the maiden away under her clothing;

Isôten vuoz ez des betwanc,
Isolde's foot it of-that forced,

daz ez hin ûf vil vaste spranc
that it away up very hard sprang

hin an daz engerl alsô zart,
thither to the little-meadow so tender,

dâ von der hübsche Nîthart
there of the courtly Neidhart

sanc, als ich vernumen hân,
sang, as I heard have,

‚aldâ die brûnen bluomen stân'.
‚where the brown flowers stand'.

Und als daz engerlîn wart naz,
And when the little-meadow became wet,

Isôt mit rede nicht zu laz
Isolde with speech not too slack

was, und ir dise geschicht geschach,
was, and to-her this happening happened,

sie begonde smielen unde sprach
she began smile and spoke

nicht alzu lûte in der vrist:
not all-too loud at the time:

„diz wazzer verre küener ist
„this water far bolder is

wen der küene Tristan;
than the bold Tristan;

der ieglîchem man ein man
who to-each man a man

manlîchen wol gewesen tar,
manly well be dares,

der entorste nie gerüeren dar
he dared never touch thither

an die minnenclîche stat,
to the lovely place,

dâ hin mich nû gerüeret hât
there to me now touched has

âne sin diz wezzerlîn.“
without sense this little-water.“

die rede erhôrte Kâedîn
the speech heard Kaedin

und sprach alsus der magde zu:
and spoke thus the maiden to:

„swester mîn, waz spriches du?“
„sister my, what speakest thou?“

„nicht“, sprach die wîzgehande Isôt.
„nothing“, spoke the white-handed Isolde.

er jach: „swester, ich muoz tôt
he declared: „sister, I must dead

durch die rede endelîch geligen,
for the speech finally lie,

ob sie mir wirt von dir verswigen."
if it to-me is by thee kept-silent."

und sie des bruoder ernst ersach,
when she of-the brother earnest saw,

sie ersiufzete unde sprach:
she sighed and spoke:

„mîn lieber bruoder Lîfrenîs,
„my dear brother Lifrenis,

ich arme Isôt Blanschemanîs
I poor Isolde Blanschemanis

sage ez ûf genâde dir,
say it on mercy to-thee,

daz her Tristan hât bî mir
that sir Tristan has beside me

alsô lange zît gelegen
so long time lain

und alles des nicht hât gepflegen
and of-all that not has practiced

noch begangen mit mînem lîbe,
nor performed with my body,

des ie man mit liebem wîbe
which ever man with dear woman

in diser werlde begienc."
in this world performed."

die rede Kâedîn gevienc
the speech Kaedin caught

nicht âne zorn in sînen muot
not without anger into his spirit

und sprach: „Isôt, mîn swester guot,
and spoke: „Isolde, my sister good,

swîc und sage die rede nieman;
be-silent and tell the speech to-no-one;

vil wol ich dir ervaren kan
very well I for-thee find-out can

an im, war umbe daz sî:
from him, for what that be:

ist dâ icht valscher kuste bî,
(if)-is there anything of-false cunning by,

ez gildet mir Tristandes leben,
it pays me Tristan's life,

des wil ich dir mîn triuwe geben."
of-that will I to-thee my faithfulness give."

Von ir gienc er sân zuhant
From her went he straightway at-once

hin, dâ er Tristanden vant;
thither, where he Tristan found;

mit diser rede huop er an
with this speech raised he on

und jach: „mîn lieber vriunt Tristan,
and declared: „my dear friend Tristan,

mîn swâger und mîn geselle,
my brother-in-law and my companion,

des ich dich vrâgen welle,
what I thee ask will,

daz solt du nemen vür guot
that shalt thou take for good

und sage mir, wes hâst du muot?"
and tell me, what hast thou in-mind?"

„wes hân ich muot?" sprach Tristân.
„what have I in-mind?" spoke Tristan.

„daz dû Isôten hâst gelân
„that thou Isolde hast left

alsô lange stunde maget."
so long time maiden."

er jach: „wer hât dir daz gesaget?“
he declared: „who has to-thee that said?“

„ich weiz ez und wil wizzen daz, 3835
„I know it and will know that,

war umme dû ir sîs gehaz?“
for what thou to-her art hostile?“

„ich ir gehaz?“ sprach Tristân.
„I to-her hostile?“ spoke Tristan.

„jâ, als ich gesprochen hân“,
„yes, as I spoken have“,

sprach sîn swâger Kâedîn.
spoke his brother-in-law Kaedin.

Tristan sprach: „ûf die triuwe mîn, 3840
Tristan spoke: „on the faithfulness my,

daz ich Isôten minne
that I Isolde love

mit herzen und mit sinne
with heart and with mind

und daz ich die vil reine
and that I the very pure-one

mit ganzen triuwen meine.“
with whole faithfulness mean.“

er meinete aber gene ander Isôt, 3845
he meant however that other Isolde,

die imz sô minnenclîche erbôt,
who to-him-it so lovingly offered,

die bêle blunde ûz Irlant.
the fair blonde from Ireland.

Kâedîn sprach sân zuhant:
Kaedin spoke straightway at-once:

„ei, wie mac immer kumen, daz
„ah, how may ever come, that

dû Isôten nicht gehaz
thou to-Isolde not hostile

bist und alsô bî ir ligest
art and so beside her liest

und der dinge nicht enpfligest,
and of-the things not practicest,

der ie manlîcher man
which ever manly man

mit liebes wîbes lîp began?
with dear woman's body began?

ich sage dirz wêrlich vür wâr:
I tell thee-it truly for true:

ist daz ich genzlîch ervar,
(if)-is that I fully find-out,

daz dû mîn swester smêhen wilt,
that thou my sister scorn wilt,

eins spiles wirt mit dir gespilt,
a game is with thee played,

daz dîne vriunt beginnen clagen.
that thy friends begin lament.

ich wil ez mînem vater sagen
I will it to-my father tell

und ouch der lieben muoter mîn."
and also to-the dear mother my."

„nein, lieber vriunt Kâedîn",
„no, dear friend Kaedin",

sô sprach der edele Tristân,
so spoke the noble Tristan,

„die rede solt du durch mich lân."
„the speech shalt thou for me let-go."

„ich enlâze ir nicht, ûf mînen eit,
„I let it not, on my oath,

du ensages mir die wârheit,
thou unless-tellest me the truth,

von welchen sachen ez sî,
from which matters it be,

daz du mîner swester bî
that thou my sister beside

ligest und sie lâzest maget.
liest and her leavest maiden.

sie ist der jâre wol betaget,
she is of-the years well aged,

volwachsen unde schœne gnuoc;
full-grown and fair enough;

nie keiser krône getruoc,
never emperor crown bore,

und solde er nemen ein wîp,
and should he take a wife,

im enwêre Isôten lîp
to-him unless-were Isolde's person

gnuoc edel unde wolgeborn."
enough noble and well-born."

Tristan sprach: „lâz dînen zorn
Tristan spoke: „let thy anger

und habe einen guoten muot!
and have a good spirit!

ich sage dir, stolzer degen vruot,
I tell thee, proud warrior wise,

ein sulchez mêre, dâ mit ich wol
a such tidings, there with I well

die hulde dîn gewinnen sol."
the favor thine win shall."

dô sprach aber Kâedîn:
then spoke again Kaedin:

„waz mêres möchte daz gesîn?
„what of-tidings might that be?

mir würde denne von dir gesaget,
to-me were except by thee said,

war umbe dû sô lange maget
for what thou so long maiden

hâst mîne swester gelân.“
hast my sister left.“

„wilt dûz in güete vorstân,
„(if)-wilt thou-it in goodness understand,

sô wil ichz gerne sagen dir.“
so will I-it gladly tell thee.“

hie mite erlachte wol zwir
here with laughed well twice

der hôchgemuote Lîfrenîs,
the high-spirited Lifrenis,

wan er Tristande in alle wîs
for he Tristan in all ways

liep hête in dem herzen sîn;
dear had in the heart his;

er jach: „nu sprich an, swâger mîn!“
he declared: „now speak on, brother-in-law my!“

Tristan tells Kaedin of the lady whose ring binds him and who keeps his dog Petitcriu more tenderly than his wife keeps him. Kaedin wants to see her. They tell the family they are going to seek adventure, sail to Litan, and send Tinas to the queen with Tristan's ring as a token.

Dô sprach der edele Tristan:
Then spoke the noble Tristan:

„dô ich schildes ampt gewan,
„when I shield's office gained,

des êrsten dô ich ritter wart,
the first when I knight became,

dô vuor ich mange swêre vart,
then went I many-a heavy journey,

âventiure suochende,
adventure seeking,

begernde und geruochende,
desiring and deigning,

daz ich durch ritterlîche site
that I for knightly custom

vil gevêchte und vil gestrite.
much should-fight and much should-battle.

underwîlen daz geschach,
at-times that happened,

daz man mich wirde erkrîgen sach;
that one me worth win saw;

alsus urburte ich mînen lîp
thus spent I my body

durch megde und durch reine wîp;
for maidens and for pure women;

under stunden daz ergienc,
at times that happened,

daz ich dar umbe lôn enpfienc;
that I there for reward received;

aleine geschach daz selden.
though happened that seldom.

nû muoz ich dir melden
now must I to-thee announce

ein âventiure, die ich verholn
an adventure, which I hidden

dir hân und lange vor gestoln:
from-thee have and long before stolen:

ich erwarp mit ritterlîcher tât,
I won with knightly deed,

der wêninc gnuoc begangen hât
which little enough performed has

unz dô her mîn swacher lîp,
until then hither my weak body,

ein alsô minnenclîchez wîp,
a so lovely woman,

schœne und alsô tugenderîch,
fair and so virtue-rich,

daz an tugenden ir gelîch
that in virtues her like

wart nie wîbes lîp geborn,
was never woman's person born,

und an schœne als ûz erkorn,
and in beauty so out chosen,

daz ir schœne hœnet,
that her beauty shames,

mit schœnheit überschœnet
with beauty over-beautifies

gar aller wîbe schœne;
wholly of-all women beauty;

ich wêne, daz die trœne
I think, that the thrones

dort oben in dem himelrîch
there above in the heaven-realm

hân nindert engel, der gelîch
have nowhere angel, who like

ir mit rechter schœne sî;
to-her with true beauty be;

adel und rîcheit wont ir bî.
nobility and riches dwell to-her by.

Daz selbe süeze reine wîp
That same sweet pure woman

gap mir iren zarten lîp
gave me her tender body

ûf mîne triuwe in mîn gewalt;
on my faithfulness into my power;

dô hête ich vröude manicvalt
then had I joys manifold

mit dem vil süezen wîbe,
with the very sweet woman,

die mit ir liebem lîbe
who with her dear body

mirz sô minnenclîch erbôt.
to-me-it so lovingly offered.

daz zarte wîp heizt ouch Isôt
the tender woman is-called also Isolde

als mîn Isôt, die swester dîn.
as my Isolde, the sister thine.

nu hœre, vil lieber Kâedîn:
now hear, very dear Kaedin:

dô ich bî der vil schœnen bleip
when I with the very fair-one stayed

und kurzewîle mit ir getreip,
and pastime with her drove,

daz mich des spiles dûchte gnuoc,
that me of-the game seemed enough,
und sich mîn dinc alsô getruoc,
and itself my affair so bore,
daz ich von der trûten schiet,
that I from the beloved parted,
ir reine triuwe ir daz geriet,
her pure faithfulness her that counseled,
daz sie mir gap diz vingerlîn
that she me gave this ring
und bat mich ûf die triuwe mîn,
and bade me on the faithfulness my,
ob mir mîn dinc sô quême
if to-me my affair so should-come
und swen mir daz gezême,
and whenever to-me that should-befit,
daz ich nême ein êlîch wîp,
that I should-take a wedded wife,
sô solde ich mîden iren lîp
so should I shun her body
mit sulchen dingen, als ein man
with such things, as a man
mit vrouwen werben sol und kan,
with ladies woo shall and can,
unz daz ich wider quême zu ir
until that I back should-come to her
und sie vornême von mir,
and she should-hear from me,
wie ich mich het gewîbet.
how I myself had wived.
durch daz gelübde blîbet
for the vow remains
dîn swester maget und ist bliben,
thy sister maiden and is remained,

sô lange und ich die zît vertriben
so long as I the time passed

habe alhie in Arundelê;
have here in Arundel;

Kâedîn, und sage dir mê,
Kaedin, and tell thee more,

daz gene ander blunde Isôt
that that other blonde Isolde

mirz sô minnenclîch erbôt
to-me-it so lovingly offered

und hielt sô schône mich daz wîp,
and held so beautifully me the woman,

daz nie man von wîbes lîp
that never man by woman's person

ûf erden wart gehalden baz,
on earth was held better,

und sage dir mit loube daz.
and tell thee with leave that.

Dort in der Gâlotten lant
There in the Welshmen's land

sluoc ich zu tôde mit mîner hant
struck I to death with my hand

einen risen, der hiez Urgân.
a giant, who was-called Urgan.

des landes vürste Gilân
of-the land prince Gilan

gap mir ein cleinez hundelîn,
gave me a small little-dog,

daz sande ich der vrouwen mîn
that sent I to-the lady my

bî einem Gâlotten,
by a Welshman,

vorworcht in einer rotten:
wrought in a rote:

daz was gar minnenclîch gepflogen
that was very lovingly tended

und hêten feien erzogen
and had fairies raised

aldort in Avelunder.
there in Avalon.

des sol dich nemen wunder
of-that shall thee take wonder

und lâz ez gar âne haz,
and let it wholly without hatred,

daz sie daz hundel habet baz,
that she the little-dog holds better,

mîn vrouwe dort, mîn ander Isôt,
my lady there, my other Isolde,

wen mirz noch ie alhie erbôt
than me-it still ever here offered

Isôt die wîzgehande."
Isolde the white-handed."

Dô nu von Tristande
When now from Tristan

gehôrte Lîfrenîs die mêr,
heard Lifrenis the tidings,

sân zuhant dô vrâgete er
straightway at-once then asked he

Tristanden, ob ez wêre wâr,
Tristan, whether it were true,

daz er im het gesaget gar.
what he him had said wholly.

dô sprach der edele Tristant:
then spoke the noble Tristan:

„des sol mîn lîp sîn dîn phant
„of-that shall my body be thy pledge

unde nim daz leben mir,
and take the life from-me,

ob ich habe gelogen dir,
if I have lied to-thee,

und ob dich sîn nicht bevilt,
and if thee of-it not wearies,

sô ervar die wârheit, swen du wilt.“
so find-out the truth, whenever thou wilt.“

zuhant gedâchte Kâedîn:
at-once thought Kaedin:

„zwâr, sô ensol die swester mîn
„truly, so shall the sister my

nicht gar lange wesen maget.
not wholly long be maiden.

und ist ez, als er hât gesaget,
and (if)-is it, as he has said,

ich vare mit im aldar
I fare with him thither

und ervare ez allez gar,
and find-out it all wholly,

daz eine und daz ander,
the one and the other,

wie schœne und wie glander
how fair and how gleaming

jene Isôt doch müge sîn,
that Isolde yet may be,

und umb daz kleine hundelîn,
and about the small little-dog,

wie schône sie daz müge hân.“
how beautifully she it may hold.“

er jach: „swâger Tristân
he declared: „brother-in-law Tristan

und lieber geselle mîn,
and dear companion my,

wêre ez an dem willen dîn,
were it in the will thy,

ich vüere mit dir sân zuhant
I would-fare with thee straightway at-once

durch beschouwen in daz lant,
for viewing into the land,

dâ von dû mir hâst geseit
there of thou to-me hast told

sô vil der grôzen schônheit.“
so much of-the great beauty.“

Tristan sprach: „daz sî getân;
Tristan spoke: „that be done;

wes ich dir gesaget hân
of-what I to-thee told have

einez von ir schœne,
one of her beauty,

die ich in herzen krœne,
whom I in heart crown,

der solt du hundert von ir sehen.“
of-that shalt thou hundred of her see.“

Kâedîn begonde jehen:
Kaedin began declare:

„und sol ich mînen vrunden
„and shall I my friends

dise reise kunden,
this journey announce,

dem vater und der muoter mîn,
to-the father and to-the mother my,

der wir eintrechtic worden sîn,
which we agreed become are,

war umbe wir nu wellen varn?“
for what we now will fare?“

„nein!“ sprach Rîwalînes barn,
„no!“ spoke Riwalin's child,

„war umb wir varen oder wie,
„for what we fare or how,

des sul wir nicht berichten sie,
of-that shall we not inform them,

wir sul in sagen unde clagen,
we shall to-them say and lament,

daz wir hie ligen sam die zagen
that we here lie like the cowards

und nicht urberen unsern lîp
and not spend our body

durch die minnenclîchen wîp.
for the lovely women.

wir sulen in daz tuon bekant,
we shall to-them that make known,

wir wellen varn in vremde lant
we will fare into foreign land

suochen âventiure,
seek adventure,

daz uns dar zu ir stiure
that us there to of-their help

werde minneclîch bekant."
become lovingly known."

hie mite giengen sie zuhant
here with went they at-once

und legeten ire willekür
and laid their will

dem vater und der muoter vür.
to-the father and to-the mother before.

Waz touc hie lange von geseit?
What avails here long of said?

schœne pfert und schœne cleit
fair palfreys and fair garments

und guot gerête âne zil,
and good gear without limit,

des wart in gegeben vil
of-that was to-them given much

und bereitet ûf die vart.
and readied for the journey.

Isôten sîne swester zart
Isolde his sister tender

die trôste wol Kâedîn
her comforted well Kaedin

und gap ir des die triuwe sîn
and gave her of-that the faithfulness his

und wart ir von im gesaget,
and was to-her by him said,

daz sie nicht lenger blîbe maget,
that she no longer remain maiden,

wan biz er mit Tristande
than until he with Tristan

quême wider zu lande.
should-come back to land.

sie nâmen urloup und vuoren hin.
they took leave and went away.

der herzoge und die herzogin
the duke and the duchess

und die wîzgehande Isôt
and the white-handed Isolde

vor jâmer stalten grôze nôt
for misery made great distress

und gâben in dâ mangen segen.
and gave them there many-a blessing.

hin riten sie, got müeze ir pflegen!
away rode they, God may of-them take-care!

Waz sol hie von gesaget mê?
What shall here of said more?

dô sie nu quâmen an die sê,
when they now came to the sea,

dô sâhens einen marner
then saw-they a mariner

gên in vaste schiffen her,
toward them hard sail hither,

sîn ruoder strichen gar gerade.
his oars stroked very nimbly.

dô gehieldens an dem stade,
then halted-they at the shore,

unz daz er zu in quême dar.
until that he to them should-come thither.

nû wart er ir ouch gewar
now became he of-them also aware

und vuor die richte gên in hin.
and went the straight-way toward them away.

dô er nu quam, dô grüezete in
when he now came, then greeted him

der tugenthafte Tristant;
the virtuous Tristan;

sîn gruoz wart im alsust bekant:
his greeting became to-him thus known:

„dêus sal, cumpân kurtois!“
„God-you save, companion courteous!“

„merci!“ sprach der Litanois.
„thanks!“ spoke the man-of-Litan.

„von wannen verstu, guoter man?“
„from whence farest-thou, good man?“

„hêrre, ich vare von Litan.“
„lord, I fare from Litan.“

„von Litan?“ sprach er Tristan.
„from Litan?“ spoke sir Tristan.

„jâ, hêrre, ich vare von Litan
„yes, lord, I fare from Litan

und vare vürbaz von Tintajol;
and fare further from Tintagel;

sint ich die wârheit sagen sol,
since I the truth tell shall,
der künic und die künigîn
the king and the queen
mit grôzen vröuden dâ sîn.“
with great joys there are.“
dô vrâgete in er Tristant:
then asked him sir Tristan:
„und ist dir ieman dâ bekant
„and is to-thee anyone there known
in der stat zu Litan?“
in the town at Litan?“
„jâ, hêrre“, sprach der wazzerman,
„yes, lord“, spoke the waterman,
„des truchsêzen eigen ich bin:
„of-the steward's own I am:
mich entriege den mîn sin,
me unless-deceive then my mind,
sô erkenne ich alle die dâ wol,
so know I all those there well,
die ich zu rechte erkennen sol,
whom I by right know shall,
und mîn hêrre Tinas
and my lord Tinas
dannoch dâ heime nechten was.“
still there at-home last-night was.“
Tristan sprach: „vüere uns dâ hin,
Tristan spoke: „lead us there thither,
ez wirt an vröuden dîn gewîn.“
it becomes in joys thy gain.“
„gerne“, sprach er, „hêrre mîn,
„gladly“, spoke he, „lord my,
nu ziehet iuwer ros her în.“
now draw your steeds hither in.“

an daz schif sie brâchten sân
onto the ship they brought then

allez, daz sie mochten hân.
all, that they might have.

die richte alsam an einer snuor
the straight-way like on a cord

der schifman gein Litan vuor.
the shipman toward Litan went.

Der êrenrîche Tinas
The honor-rich Tinas

inredes gegangen was
meanwhile gone was

durch kurzewîle zu dem stade.
for pastime to the shore.

nu sach er snel und wol gerade
now saw he quick and well nimble

daz schif dort her strîchen
the ship there hither stroke

und vaste gein im slîchen.
and hard toward him glide.

und ez zu dem stade quam,
when it to the shore came,

dô ersach er und vornam,
then saw he and perceived,

daz der hêrre Tristant
that the lord Tristan

was aber kumen in daz lant.
was again come into the land.

her Tristant von dem schiffe gienc,
sir Tristan from the ship went,

Tinas in minnenclîch enpfienc
Tinas him lovingly received

und ummevienc in an der stunt
and embraced him at the hour

und kuste in an sînen munt
and kissed him on his mouth

und vuorte in an sîn gemach.
and led him to his chamber.

Tristant im zuhant vorjach
Tristan to-him at-once declared

der gelegenheite sîn
the situation his

und war umme Kâedîn
and for what Kaedin

was mit im zu lande kumen.
was with him to land come.

Tinas ouch schiere het vornumen
Tinas also quickly had heard

von ern Tristandes munt
from sir Tristan's mouth

umbe Petitcriu den hunt,
about Petitcriu the dog,

daz er het gerüemet sich,
that he had boasted himself,

daz in Isôt sô minnenclich
that it Isolde so lovingly

und verre schôner konde hân
and far more-fairly could keep

den etlîch wîp iren man.
than any woman her husband.

Tinas der gap im guoten rât,
Tinas he gave him good counsel,

er jach: „sint iuwer dinc sô stât,
he declared: „since your affair so stands,

sô wil ich îlen unde jagen,
so will I hasten and hurry,

al iuwer sache wil ich sagen
all your matter will I tell

mîner vrouwen der künigîn.“
to-my lady the queen.“

Tristant gap im ein vingerlîn
Tristan gave him a ring

und sprach gar minneclîch zu im:
and spoke very lovingly to him:

„Tinas, diz vingerlîn du nim
„Tinas, this ring thou take

unde vüere iz mit dir hin:
and carry it with thee away:

sô schiere daz die künigin
as quickly that the queen

an dînem vinger daz ersicht,
on thy finger that sees,

sô enhât sie dar an zwîvel nicht,
so has she there of doubt not,

ich ensî hie in dem lande.“
I be here in the land.“

sust schiet er von Tristande,
thus parted he from Tristan,

der vil getriuwe Tinas,
the very faithful Tinas,

und reit hin, dâ der künic was.
and rode thither, where the king was.

stîge und strâze konde er wol
paths and street knew he well

hin gein dem hûse zu Tintajol.
away toward the house at Tintagel.

Isolde quarrels over the chess game to be left alone with Tinas, learns of Tristan's wager, and persuades Mark to ride to the White Land. Tristan and Kaedin hide in a hedge as the court passes. Kaedin takes Kameline for the queen, but Tristan tells him to wait. The litter carrying Petitcriu passes, and then Isolde herself, crowned and robed.

Und er in die burc quam,
When he into the castle came,
von dem gesinde vernam
from the household heard
der wol bekante Tinas
the well known Tinas
vil schiere, wâ der künic was;
very quickly, where the king was;
dâ wart im gezeiget hin.
there was to-him shown thither.
den künic und die künegin
the king and the queen
gar minnenclîchen vander
very lovingly found-he
sitzen bî einander,
sitting beside each-other,
dô sie ein schâchzabel zugen.
when they a chessboard moved.
ir ougen blicke lieplîch vlugen
their eyes' glances lovingly flew
über daz bret ofte entwer
over the board often across
von einem hin zume anderen her,
from one thither to-the other hither,
von einem her zume anderen hin.
from one hither to-the other thither.

Tinas mit loube saz zu zin;
Tinas with leave sat to them;

Isôt ersach daz vingerlîn
Isolde saw the ring

Tinâsen an der hende sîn.
of-Tinas on the hand his.

inredes der künic sprach
meanwhile the king spoke

zu der küneginne: „schâch!“
to the queen: „check!“

„dâ schâch!“ sprach die künegîn,
„there check!“ spoke the queen,

„hie buoz mit dem ritter mîn!“
„here remedy with the knight my!“

„abschâch!“ sprach der künic sân.
„discovered-check!“ spoke the king then.

sie gedâchte: „abschâch wirt iuch getân:
she thought: „discovered-check is to-you done:

mich dunket, er sî aber kumen,
me seems, he be again come,

von dem mir sorge wirt benumen.“
by whom from-me care is taken.“

nu wart verrücket ein stein;
now was moved a piece;

des huob ein kriec sich under in zwein,
from-that raised a quarrel itself between them two,

den muoste bescheiden Tinas,
which must settle Tinas,

wan anders nieman bî in was.
for otherwise no-one by them was.

Der stein wart ûf dem brete entwer
The piece was on the board across

gerücket hin unde her,
moved thither and hither,

er rückete in her; hin rückete in sie.
he moved it hither; thither moved it she.

inredes was Tinas hie,
meanwhile was Tinas here,

der getriuwe von Litan,
the faithful-one of Litan,

und jach: „der stein alhie sol stân!“
and declared: „the piece here shall stand!“

und greif mit der hant aldar.
and reached with the hand thither.

alrêrst sie rechte wart gewar
first she rightly became aware

Isôt die blunde künegîn
Isolde the blonde queen

ir bêamîses vingerlîn
of-her fair-friend's ring

und wart ir wêrlîch bekant,
and became to-her truly known,

daz ir vriunt her Tristant
that her friend sir Tristan

dâ bî ir in dem lande was
there by her in the land was

und daz ez weste Tinas.
and that it knew Tinas.

zuhant Isôt die künegîn
at-once Isolde the queen

huob ein cleinez kriegelîn
raised a small little-quarrel

mit dem künege umb daz spil;
with the king about the game;

sie sprach: „er künic, ich enwil
she spoke: „sir king, I will

nicht mê spilen zu diser zît,
not more play at this time,

habet iuch spil unde strît,
have you game and strife,

habet iuch vorlust und gewin!“
have you loss and gain!“

und stiez daz bret von ir hin,
and thrust the board from her away,

sam ez in zorne wêre geschehen.
as-if it in anger were happened.

Marke dô begonde jehen,
Mark then began declare,

der künic edel unde wert:
the king noble and worthy:

„nu dar, man satel uns die pfert!
„now thither, one saddle for-us the palfreys!

wir sulen rîten von ir hin,
we shall ride from her away,

unz sie vorzürne die künegin.
until she cease-raging the queen.

Tinas, wilt du rîten mite?“
Tinas, wilt thou ride with?“

Tinas mit züchticlîchem site
Tinas with courteous manner

sprach: „hêrre, ich gar müede bin.“
spoke: „lord, I very weary am.“

„sô blîp hie bî der künegin,
„so stay here with the queen,

vil lîchte wirt sie wol gemuot.“
very likely becomes she well spirited.“

er bleip. hin reit der künic guot.
he stayed. away rode the king good.

Tinas mit der künegin
Tinas with the queen

gienc an ein einœte hin;
went to a solitude thither;

sie sprach: „Tinas, nû sage an,
she spoke: „Tinas, now say on,

wâ ist mîn lieber vriunt Tristan?“
where is my dear friend Tristan?“

er jach: „zu Litan ich in liez
he declared: „at Litan I him left

und werbe gein iuch, als er mich hiez.“
and act toward you, as he me bade.“

„sage an, waz hât er enpoten mir?“
„say on, what has he sent to-me?“

er jach: „vrouwe, dâ sult ir
he declared: „lady, there shall you

mit dem künege daz an tragen,
with the king that on bring,

morgen wen ez beginne tagen
tomorrow when it begins to-dawn

und nicht lenger bîte,
and not longer waits,

daz er denne rîte
that he then ride

gein dem blanken lande hin
toward the white land away

und iuch, vrouwe künegin,
and you, lady queen,

lâze mit im dâ hin varn.
let with him there away fare.

mit der reise müget ir bewarn
with the journey may you save

Tristande wol daz leben sîn.“
for-Tristan well the life his.“

„wie sô? vil lieber vriunt mîn,
„how so? very dear friend my,

ist Tristan in keiner nôt?“
is Tristan in any distress?“

„jâ“, sprach er, „vrouwe, schœne Isôt,
„yes“, spoke he, „lady, fair Isolde,

tuot, als ich iuch gesaget hân,
do, as I to-you said have,

sô geniset wol her Tristân.
so survives well sir Tristan.

und als ich iuch noch sagen sol,
and as I to-you still tell shall,

ir sult iuch fêgetieren wol
you shall yourself adorn well

in iuwer allerbesten wât;
in your very-best clothing;

und morgen, sô die sunne ûf gât,
and tomorrow, when the sun up goes,

sô lât den künic rîten vor
so let the king ride before

und rîtet nâch ûf sînem spor
and ride after on his track

hin gein dem blanken lande.
away toward the white land.

mit hêrren Tristande
with lord Tristan

kumt ein speher in der zît
comes a spy at the time

in den hac, der dâ lît
into the hedge, which there lies

an dem wege, dâ ir rîtet hin.“
by the way, where you ride away.“

„waz wil der?“ sprach die künegin,
„what will he?“ spoke the queen,

„oder waz schaffet er hie?“
„or what does he here?“

Tinas sprach: „ich sage iuch wie:
Tinas spoke: „I tell you how:

er wil ôt iuwer schœne spehen;
he will just your beauty espy;

und ist, daz er ie hât gesehen
and (if)-is, that he ever has seen

bî sînen tagen schœner wîp,
in his days fairer woman,

daz gêt Tristande an sînen lîp.
that goes to-Tristan at his life.

des hât her sich verpflichtet."
to-that has he himself pledged."

„hâst dû mich rechte berichtet?"
„hast thou me rightly informed?"

sprach sie, „vil lieber, sage mir daz!"
spoke she, „very dear-one, tell me that!"

„ich kanz iuch noch gesagen baz:
„I can-it to-you still tell better:

ein wetten ist von im geschehen,
a wager is by him happened,

er hât dem speher verjehen,
he has to-the spy declared,

daz ir habet ein hundelîn,
that you have a little-dog,

daz hundel sî gewesen sîn,
the little-dog be been his,

daz habet ir schôner durch in,
that hold you more-fairly for him,

den etelîche vürstin
than any princess

handelt unde haben kan
treats and hold can

mit schônheit ir êlîchen man.
with beauty her wedded husband.

welt ir im behalden daz leben,
(if)-will you him keep the life,

sô müezet ir hie zu rât geben,
so must you here to counsel give,

wie daz müge geschehen,
how that may happen,

daz sie iuch morgen alsô sehen
that they you tomorrow so see

und mit iuch daz hundelîn.“
and with you the little-dog.“

„Tinas“, sprach die künegîn,
„Tinas“, spoke the queen,

„ich heize Isôt und binz Isôt,
„I am-called Isolde and am-it Isolde,

Tristande helfe ich ûz der nôt
Tristan help I out-of the distress

mit listen und mit schœnen siten.“
with cunning and with fair manners.“

Nu quam der künic ouch geriten.
Now came the king also ridden.

und er von dem rosse saz,
when he from the steed dismounted,

in sînem schimpfe sprach er daz:
in his jest spoke he that:

„vrouwe küneginne, zürnet ir noch?“
„lady queen, are-angry you still?“

sie sprach: „jâ, ich zürne doch,
she spoke: „yes, I am-angry yet,

doch zürne ich unde zürne noch,
yet am-angry I and am-angry still,

ich zürne, ich zürne und zürne doch.“
I am-angry, I am-angry and am-angry yet.“

„war umb?“ „dâ krieget ir zu vil,
„for what?“ „there quarrel you too much,

ob ich zu einem mâle ein spil
if I at one time a game

des tages mit iuch spilen sol.“
of-the day with you play shall.“

er jach: „ich wil daz bezzeren wol.“
he declared: „I will that amend well.“

„wâ mite welt ir bezzeren mir?“
„where with will you amend to-me?“

„rechte als mir gebietet ir
„right as me command you

und swes ir turret gebiten
and whatever you dare bid

mich mit züchteclîchen siten,
me with courteous manners,

des selben ich iuch zwâr gewer.“
of-that same I you truly grant.“

sie sprach: „daz gelobet her!“
she spoke: „that promise hither!“

ir wîze hant sie bôt im dar;
her white hand she offered him thither;

er gelobete iz ir und liez ez wâr.
he promised it to-her and let it true.

Dô sprach Isôt die künegîn:
Then spoke Isolde the queen:

„künic Marke, lieber hêrre mîn,
„king Mark, dear lord my,

uns ist hie zu Tintajol
to-us is here at Tintagel

lange zît gewesen wol;
long time been well;

ich bite iuch des innenclich,
I ask you of-it heartily,

sint daz nu hie betrâget mich,
since that now here wearies me,

daz wir die reise nicht ensparn;
that we the journey not spare;

wir sulen mit einander varn
we shall with each-other fare

hin gein dem blanken lande:
away toward the white land:

dâ sul wir aller hande
there shall we of-all kinds

kurzewîle trîben
pastime drive

und sulen aldâ blîben
and shall there remain

wol kegen vierzehen tagen;
well toward fourteen days;

beizen, birsen und jagen
hawk, stalk and hunt

sul wir mit vröuden aldâ."
shall we with joys there."

„vrouwe", sprach der künic, „jâ,
„lady", spoke the king, „yes,

dâ enhœret nicht lange bete zu,
there belongs not long request to,

wen ich ez selbe gerne tu."
for I it self gladly do."

dô sprach Isôt, Isalden barn:
then spoke Isolde, Isolde's child:

„wenne welt ir, daz wir varn?"
„when will you, that we fare?"

„morgen vruo, rechte als ez taget,
„tomorrow early, right as it dawns,

sol ez geschehen." dô wart gesaget
shall it happen." then was said

über al dem hovegesinde,
over all to-the court-household,

von kinde zu kinde,
from child to child,

daz sie schône und ritterlich
that they beautifully and knightly

ûf dise vart bereiten sich.
for this journey ready themselves.

Nu gienc Isôt, dâ Tinas
Now went Isolde, where Tinas

an sîme gemache aleine was;
in his chamber alone was;

sus jach die schœne blunde Isôt:
thus declared the fair blonde Isolde:

„wol hin, gewin daz botenbrôt
„well away, win the messenger's-reward

ab mînem vriunde Tristân:
from my friend Tristan:

sprich, al sîn wille sol ergân,
speak, all his will shall come-to-pass,

und swenne ez morgen tage,
and whenever it tomorrow dawns,

daz er mîn warte in dem hage,
that he for-me wait in the hedge,

und swâ er sî, an swelcher stat,
and wherever he be, at whichever place,

ûz dem hage an daz pfat
out-of the hedge onto the path

werfe er von loube ein rîsel;
throw he of leaves a little-twig;

sô sende ich vür Tantrîsel,
so send I before Tantrisel,

daz ez des rîses neme war;
that it of-the twig take heed;

und rîte ouch ich nâch im dar;
and ride also I after it thither;

swâ ez erbeize, dâ erbeize ouch ich.
wherever it dismounts, there dismount also I.

nu grüeze Tristande innenclich,
now greet Tristan heartily,

der mir ist liep und ie liep was!“
who to-me is dear and ever dear was!“

„gerne, vrouwe!“ sprach Tinas.
„gladly, lady!“ spoke Tinas.

her nam urloup und reit von dan
he took leave and rode from thence

die richte hin gein Litan.
the straight-way away toward Litan.

Tristan im ingegen gienc,
Tristan him toward went,

gar minnenclîche er in enpfienc.
very lovingly he him received.

er dankte im schône in der zît
he thanked him beautifully at the time

und jach: „hêrre mîn, vrô sît,
and declared: „lord my, glad be,

getriuwer edeler Tristân,
faithful noble Tristan,

alle iuwer wille sol ergân.“
all your will shall come-to-pass.“

und allez, daz im Îsôt
and all, that to-him Isolde

die blunde bî Tinas enpôt,
the blonde-one by Tinas sent,

daz wart im schiere geseit,
that was to-him quickly told,

von ende zu ende vür geleit.
from end to end before laid.

Her Tristan diser lieben vart
Sir Tristan of-this dear journey

vrô von ganzem herzen wart,
glad from whole heart became,

daz er ie dar kumen was.
that he ever thither come was.

und der getriuwe Tinas,
and the faithful Tinas,

von arte edel und geslacht,
by birth noble and well-born,

der pflac sîn schône die nacht
he took-care of-him beautifully the night

und alsô minnenclîchen wol,
and so lovingly well,

alsô vriunt vriundes pflegen sol.
as friend of-friend take-care shall.

des morgens dô ûf gienc der tac,
in-the morning when up went the day,

Tristan der huop sich in den hac
Tristan he raised himself into the hedge

und sîn geselle Kâedîn.
and his companion Kaedin.

der künic und die künigîn
the king and the queen

und mange wunnenclîche schar
and many-a delightful company

von rittern und von vrouwen clâr
of knights and of ladies bright

wâren ûf die vart bereit,
were for the journey ready,

schône und rîchlîch gecleit
beautifully and richly clad

wol nâch irem rechte.
well after their right.

der köche, küchenknechte,
the cooks, kitchen-lads,

buoben und garzûne
boys and grooms

und swaz dâ pedûne
and whatever there of-rabble

in beiden hoven mochte sîn,
in both courts might be,

des küniges und der künigîn,
of-the king and of-the queen,

der reise wart dâ nicht gespart:
of-the journey was there nothing spared:

die huoben sich vor ûf die vart.
they raised themselves before onto the journey.

jager unde valkener,
huntsmen and falconers,

des küniges amptman, dirre und der,
the king's officers, this-one and that-one,

die huoben ûf die strâze sich;
they raised onto the street themselves;

vil mangen soumer rîchlich
very many-a sumpter richly

sach man dâ soumschrîn tragen;
saw one there pack-chests carry;

vil wol geladener kamerwagen
very well laden chamber-wagons

begonden dar nâch schône gân;
began there after beautifully go;

die schrîber und die capelân
the scribes and the chaplains

und kamerêre dar nâch riten.
and chamberlains there after rode.

gar nâch küneclîchem siten
very after kingly manner

vür den hac reit aldar
before the hedge rode thither

mit manger ritterlîchen schar
with many-a knightly company

der edele künic Marke.
the noble king Mark.

nu burgen sich vil starke
now bid themselves very strongly

Tristan unde Kâedîn
Tristan and Kaedin

in den hac vaste hin în,
into the hedge hard thither in,

daz ir nieman wart gewar,
that of-them no-one became aware,

unz daz sie verzogeten gar.
until that they passed wholly.

Dô nû der künic hin vür quam,
When now the king away before came,

Tristan ein grüenez rîsel nam
Tristan a green little-twig took

und warf ez in den wec aldar,
and threw it into the way thither,

daz sîn Tantrîsel würde gewar
that of-it Tantrisel should-become aware

und ez vunde ligen dâ.
and it should-find lie there.

nû quam ouch geriten sâ
now came also ridden then

die allerwunnenclîchste schar
the very-most-delightful company

von manger juncvrouwen clâr
of many-a young-lady bright

und von den schœnsten vrouwen,
and of the fairest ladies,

die man ie beschouwen
whom one ever behold

dorfte ûf erden oder gesehen.
might on earth or see.

ir rœselechter wangen brehen
their rose-colored cheeks' shining

gap dem rôsen widerglast.
gave to-the roses reflection.

Kâedîn, des landes gast,
Kaedin, of-the land guest,

sprach zu hêrren Tristan:
spoke to lord Tristan:

„trût geselle, nû sage an,
„dear companion, now say on,

wer ist die wunnenclîche schar,
who is the delightful company,

die alsô schœne und alsô clâr
which so fair and so bright

kumt in sô lichtem schîne?"
comes in so bright shining?"

dô sprach zu Kâedîne
then spoke to Kaedin

Tristan: „vil lieber Kâedîn,
Tristan: „very dear Kaedin,

ez ist mîn vrouwe die künegîn,
it is my lady the queen,

daz sî dir wêrlîch gesaget;
that be to-thee truly said;

die kumt mit manger stolzen maget
she comes with many-a proud maiden

und manger schœnen vrouwen.
and many-a fair lady.

du solt noch hiute schouwen,
thou shalt still today behold,
daz ich dir wâr hân geseit.“
that I to-thee true have said.“
selbander ie die vrouwe reit
by-two ever the lady rode
in rîcher wête glander;
in rich clothing gleaming;
ie zwô neben einander
ever two beside each-other
riten wunnenclîch gecleit.
rode delightfully clad.
bî etlîcher ein ritter reit,
by many-a-one a knight rode,
durch daz er was ir redegenôz;
for that he was her speech-companion;
der zît sie wêninc dô verdrôz.
of-the time them little then vexed.
Kâedîn sach alles dar
Kaedin looked ever thither
und nam ir besunder war.
and took of-them apart heed.
swie schœne in eine dûchte,
however fair to-him one seemed,
sô gleste unde lûchte
so gleamed and shone
aber eine schœner dort her;
again one fairer there hither;
und von ieglîcher vrâgete er
and of each asked he
Tristanden den gesellen sîn:
Tristan the companion his:
„Tristan, ist daz die künegîn?“
„Tristan, is that the queen?“

Tristan sprach alles: „nein!“
Tristan spoke ever: „no!“

alsô lange, daz in erschein
so long, that to-him appeared

in wunnenclîchem schîne
in delightful shining

die clâre Kamelîne,
the bright Kameline,

die von der Scheteliure;
she of the Scheteliure;

bî der reit die gehiure,
by her rode the gentle,

die süeze wolgetâne,
the sweet well-made,

die schœne maget Brangâne.
the fair maiden Brangaene.

und als er Kamelînen
and when he Kameline

sach glesten unde schînen,
saw gleam and shine,

daz minnenclîche bilde,
the lovely image,

sô schône über daz gevilde
so beautifully over the open-field

und sie gap sô lichten schîn,
and she gave so bright shining,

er jach: „ich sehe die künegîn!
he declared: „I see the queen!

sô mir sêle unde lîp:
so-help me soul and body:

ich ensach nie schœner wîp!
I saw never fairer woman!

Tristan, du hâst mir wâr geseit!“
Tristan, thou hast to-me true said!“

dô sprach Tristan mit hübescheit:
then spoke Tristan with courtliness:

„sie enist sîn nicht mîn vrouwe Isôt;
„she is of-it not my lady Isolde;

die wêre kûme ein morgenrôt
she were barely a morning-red

gein jener brehenden sunnen,
against that shining sun,

die dû noch hiute in wunnen
whom thou still today in bliss

solt in grôzen vröuden sehen."
shalt in great joys see."

und er im des het verjehen,
when he him of-that had declared,

dô truogen zwêne zelter
then bore two ambling-horses

über daz gevilde gein in her
over the open-field toward them hither

ein schœne rosbâren:
a fair horse-litter:

die ros beide wâren
the steeds both were

gar wunnenclîch gezieret,
very delightfully adorned,

rîchlîch verlankenieret
richly caparisoned

gar mit edelem baldikîn.
wholly with noble baldachin.

mit schœnen tuochen sîdîn
with fair cloths silken

die bâre was gezieret gnuoc,
the litter was adorned enough,

die daz hunthiusel truoc.
which the dog-house bore.

daz hiusel daz was guldîn,
the little-house it was golden,

dar inne was daz hundelîn
there in was the little-dog

Petitcriu, daz gesant
Petitcriu, which sent

ûz der gotinne lant
out-of the goddess's land

Gilâne wart durch wunder
to-Gilan was for wonder

dort her von Avalunder
there hither from Avalon

und daz der edele Tristan
and which the noble Tristan

mit strîte manlîch gewan.
with battle manfully gained.

Dar nâch reit die schœne Isôt,
There after rode the fair Isolde,

gein der alle schœne tôt
against whom all beauty dead

was, die bî iren lebetagen
was, which in her life-days

maget oder vrouwe mochte tragen,
maiden or lady might bear,

Tristandes vröuden houbetschatz.
Tristan's joys' head-treasure.

sie gebârte, als ob sie sprêche tratz
she bore-herself, as if she should-speak defiance

allem dem, daz schônheit
to-all that, which beauty

in diser werlt von wîben treit.
in this world from women bears.

ir pfert hête einen senften ganc,
her palfrey had a gentle gait,

von golde erglenzete und erclanc
of gold gleamed and rang

gar allez ir gereite.
very all her gear.

Tantrîsel ir geleite
Tantrisel her escort

was und der listige Antret.
was and the cunning Antret.

ahiu, wie schône sie het
ah, how beautifully she had

sich ûz gefêgetieret,
herself out adorned,

gesprenzet und gezieret
decked and adorned

in ir bestez gewant!
in her best garment!

ir mantel was ein blîant,
her mantle was a bliaut,

durchworcht mit golde und durchslagen
worked-through with gold and beaten-through

sô rîchlîch, daz ich nie gesagen
so richly, that I never tell

hôrte von sô rîcher wât
heard of so rich clothing

und ouch mîn ouge nicht enhât
and also my eye not has

sô kostebêre ein cleit gesehen.
so costly a garment seen.

vier lîsten sach man drinne brehen
four borders saw one therein shine

von arabischem golde fin;
of Arabian gold fine;

vil saphir, smaragde und rubîn
many sapphires, emeralds and rubies

wâren mit kunst dar în geleit.
were with art there into laid.

diz rîche kostebêre cleit
this rich costly garment

mit wîzen harmbalgen was
with white ermine-skins was

underzogen, als ich las.
lined, as I read.

den tiuweren mantel vuorte sie
the precious mantle wore she

ob alle iren cleiden hie,
over all her garments here,

die sunnenbrehende lichte Isôt;
the sun-shining bright Isolde;

zu beiden sîten sich erbôt
on both sides itself offered

der mantel ab dem pferde
the mantle off the palfrey

vaste hin ûf die erde.
hard down onto the earth.

roc und suckenîe
coat and surcoat

die reine, wandels vrîe
the pure, of-blemish free

vuorte sie dar under,
wore she there under,

geworcht in Avalunder
wrought in Avalon

von der gotinne hende.
by the goddess's hands.

und swaz ich von gebende
and whatever I of headdress
ie gehôrte oder ie gelas,
ever heard or ever read,
noch rîcher ir gebende was,
still richer her headdress was,
daz sie dâ truoc die reine,
which she there bore the pure-one,
mit edelem gesteine
with noble gemstone
gezieret und durchwieret,
adorned and set-through,
durchwieret und gezieret
set-through and adorned
schône und kostelîchen gnuoc.
beautifully and costly enough.
ir houbet eine krône truoc
her head a crown bore
ob dem gebende glander:
above the headdress gleaming:
ich enwêne, daz Alexander,
I not-think, that Alexander,
künic Artûs unde Salatîn
king Arthur and Saladin
getruogen krône ie sô fîn
bore crown ever so fine
von arabischem golde.
of Arabian gold.
vil edeler crisolde,
many noble chrysolites,
smaragde und topazius,
emeralds and topaz,
ônichus und sardius,
onyx and sard,

der lâgen vil dar inne.
of-them lay many there in.

sus reit die küneginne
thus rode the queen

gein dem hage, die blunde Isôt.
toward the hedge, the blonde Isolde.

XVI · THE TENT BY THE RIVER

Kaedin takes the queen's brightness for a second sun. She stops at the hedge to fondle Petitcriu, and Kaedin concedes the wager. She feigns illness, sends Antret to tell Mark she will stay on this side of the water, and loudly names her tent by the linden. At night Tantrisel's horn brings Tristan and Kaedin into the tent, where Isolde welcomes them, Brangaene and Kameline entertain Kaedin, and wine is served.

Nu was ouch durch daz morgenrôt
Now was also through the morning-red

gegangen ûf die sunne. 4525
gone up the sun.

Isôt die spilende wunne
Isolde the playing bliss

gap widerglast der sunnen.
gave reflection to-the sun.

der sunnen und der wunnen
of-the sun and of-the bliss

widerglast und widerschîn
reflection and counter-shining

wart sô grôz, daz Kâedîn 4530
became so great, that Kaedin

erschrac und sprach zu Tristân:
took-fright and spoke to Tristan:

„sich, sich, waz ich ersehen hân:
„look, look, what I seen have:

dort an dem himel ein sunne stât
there in the heaven a sun stands

und hie ein ander sunne ûf gât!
and here an other sun up goes!

ei, wie ist disem dinge alsô?
ah, how is with-this thing so?

sint nû der sunnen worden zwô?
are now of-the suns become two?

zwâr, daz bezeichent etewaz.“
truly, that signifies something.“

Tristan der sprach: „ich sage dir daz:
Tristan he spoke: „I tell thee that:

jene sunne, die dort stât
that sun, which there stands

und durch die wolken ûf gât,
and through the clouds up goes,

die ist des himels sunne;
it is the heaven's sun;

sô ist mîns herzen wunne
so is my heart's bliss

hie diser lichten sunnen schîn,
here this bright sun's shining,

Isôt mîn vrouwe, die künegîn,
Isolde my lady, the queen,

die mit ir lichtem glaste
who with her bright gleam

her in mîn herze vaste
hither into my heart hard

kan sô wunnenclîchen brehen.
can so delightfully shine.

Kâedîn, kanst dû nu spehen
Kaedin, canst thou now espy

wîbes schœne“, sprach Tristan,
woman's beauty“, spoke Tristan,

„sô sich die schœne Isôten an,
„so look the fair Isolde at,

die spilende sunne von Irlant.“
the playing sun of Ireland.“

Inredes quam her gerant
Meanwhile came hither running

daz edele und daz werde
the noble and the worthy

und erbeizte von dem pferde,
and dismounted from the palfrey,

daz hübsche kint Tantrîsel,
the courtly child Tantrisel,

und huob ûf daz rîsel,
and raised up the little-twig,

daz von grüenem loube gar
which of green leaves wholly

Tristan het geworfen dar.
Tristan had thrown thither.

umb sîn houbet ez daz swanc.
about its head it that swung.

nu quam dar nâch nicht über lanc
now came there after not over long

die künegîn an die selbe stat;
the queen to the same place;

ab dem pferde sie dô trat
off the palfrey she then stepped

und saz nider in den clê;
and sat down in the clover;

dem hundel lockte sie und schrê:
the little-dog lured she and cried:

„zâ, Petitcriu, zâ, zâ, zâ!“
„here, Petitcriu, here, here, here!“

daz hundel quam geloufen sâ
the little-dog came running straightway

ûz dem hiusel guldîn
out-of the little-house golden

her gein der blunden künegîn.
hither toward the blonde queen.

ez walgete in den bluomen sich,
it rolled in the flowers itself,

sîn houbt ez schutte weckerlich,
its head it shook briskly,

sîn ôren claften im dar an;
its ears flapped to-it there on;

hie mit ez pfûchzen began
here with it to-snort began

und weibezegelte gein ir.
and wagged-its-tail toward her.

sie nam ez mit lieplîcher gir,
she took it with loving longing,

gein herzen sie ez dructe,
toward heart she it pressed,

sie helsete ez und smucte
she hugged it and nestled

gar lieplîch ûf ir bruste.
very lovingly onto her breast.

ob sie daz hundel kuste,
whether she the little-dog kissed,

des entar ich sprechen nicht vür wâr.
that dare I speak not for true.

Isôt die küneginne clâr
Isolde the queen bright

des hundels kleine verdrôz;
of-the little-dog little was-vexed;

sie legete ez schône an ire schôz
she laid it beautifully in her lap

und nam mit ir wîzen hant
and took with her white hand

iren mantel von blîant
her mantle of bliaut

und behulte ez dâ mite.
and covered it there with.

die geschicht und die site
the happening and the manner

gar wol merkte Kâedîn
very well marked Kaedin

und sprach alsô: „geselle mîn
and spoke so: „companion my

und lieber swâger Tristân,
and dear brother-in-law Tristan,

ich wil des eides dich erlân.
I will of-the oath thee release.

ich weiz wol, daz mîn swester Isôt
I know well, that my sister Isolde

ez dir nie sô wol erbôt,
it to-thee never so well offered,

swie vil sie triuwen gein dir wielt,
however much she faithfulness toward thee wielded,

und dich sô schône nie gehielt,
and thee so beautifully never held,

sam Isôt die künegîn
as Isolde the queen

tuot diz kleine hundelîn.
does this small little-dog.

ich neme ez ouch ûf mînen eit
I take it also on my oath

und ist die ganze wârheit,
and is the whole truth,

daz ich gesach nie schœner wîp
that I saw never fairer woman
noch alsô wol gestalten lîp,
nor so well shaped body,
alsam sie hât die künegîn."
as she has the queen."
Dô nam ouch sie daz hundelîn
Then took also she the little-dog
und satzte ez in sîn hiusel,
and set it into its little-house,
sie sperte zu daz cliusel
she locked to the little-cell
und saz wider in den clê.
and sat back in the clover.
„ach", sprach sie, „mir ist gar wê
„ah", spoke she, „to-me is very woe
worden an dem herzen;
become at the heart;
owê, owê des smerzen,
alas, alas the pain,
der mich nû bestanden hât!"
which me now assailed has!"
sie viel mit der rîchen wât
she fell with the rich clothing
ûf daz gras die lenge.
onto the grass the length.
sie sprach: „ein wazzer brenge
she spoke: „a water bring
iuwer einez balde mir!"
of-you one quickly me!"
Kamelîne saz zu ir
Kameline sat to her
und nam ir houbt in ire schôz.
and took her head into her lap.

ir siuche enwas nicht alzu grôz.
her sickness was not all-too great.

ir was der minne smerze
to-her was the love's pain

geslagen an daz herze.
struck at the heart.

des enmochte ir wîp noch man
of-that not-might her woman nor man

gebüezen wen her Tristan,
cure except sir Tristan,

der ir doch nicht gar verre enwas.
who to-her yet not wholly far was.

der half ir, daz sie genas
he helped her, that she recovered

dar nâch in der selben nacht.
there after in the same night.

nû wart ouch daz wazzer brâcht;
now was also the water brought;

die küneginne wart gelabet.
the queen was refreshed.

ich enweiz, ob irz vernumen habet:
I not-know, whether you-it heard have:

dô hiez sie kumen Antret.
then bade she come Antret.

Antret quam an der stet;
Antret came on the spot;

sie sprach: „vil lieber knecht mîn,
she spoke: „very dear squire my,

nu rît hin zu dem hêrren dîn
now ride away to the lord thy

und sage im, daz ich arme Isôt
and tell him, that I poor Isolde

vil nâhen sî gelegen tôt,
very near be lain dead,

als dû wol selbe hâst gesehen.
as thou well self hast seen.

dû solt im ouch des verjehen,
thou shalt to-him also of-that declare,

ich enmüge nicht über daz wazzer,
I may not over the water,

mîn lîp siech unde lazzer
my body sick and slack

mac nicht die vart erlîden.
may not the journey endure.

mich muoz der künic mîden
me must the king shun

dise nacht durch sîne zucht."
this night for his breeding."

sus jach die küniclîche vrucht:
thus declared the kingly fruit:

„ich wil hie disehalb blîben,
„I will here this-side remain,

die nacht alhie vertrîben
the night here pass

unz morgen, sô der tac ûf gât;
until tomorrow, when the day up goes;

ob mich die krancheit verlât,
if me the weakness leaves,

sô wil ich vrôlîch zu im kumen.
so will I gladly to him come.

Antret, hâst dû daz wol vernumen?"
Antret, hast thou that well heard?"

„jâ", sprach er, „vrouwe künegîn,
„yes", spoke he, „lady queen,

ob sich gevüeget die reise mîn,
if itself contrives the journey my,

daz mir der tac entslîfet
that from-me the day slips

und mich die nacht begrîfet,
and me the night seizes,

sol ich danne blîben dort?“
shall I then remain there?“

sie sprach: „jâ, daz ist wol mîn wort.“
she spoke: „yes, that is well my word.“

er wêre ir lieber tôt gewesen
he would-be to-her more-gladly dead been

dort wen alhie bî ir genesen.
there than here by her survived.

hin reit der hemische Antret;
away rode the spiteful Antret;

swaz in sîn vrouwe geheizen het,
whatever him his lady bidden had,

daz warp er gein dem künege sâ
that delivered he toward the king then

und bleip bî im die nacht aldâ.
and stayed with him the night there.

Waz touc hie lange rede nu?
What avails here long speech now?

Tristan der hête allez zu
Tristan he had all to

beide gehôrt und gesehen;
both heard and seen;

und allez daz dâ was geschehen,
and all that there was happened,

daz nam er in daz herze sîn;
that took he into the heart his;

und wâ die nacht die künegîn
and where the night the queen

wolde ligen, daz weste er wol:
would lie, that knew he well:

des wart sîn herze vröuden vol
of-that became his heart of-joys full

dem stolzen und dem genenden.
to-the proud and to-the daring-one.

zwâr sie endorfte im senden
truly she needed him send

keinen boten in der stunt,
no messenger at the hour,

wan sie mit ir selbes munt
for she with her self's mouth

hête im die ganze wârheit
had to-him the whole truth

geoffenbâret und geseit.
revealed and said.

doch lief sie hin an den hac,
yet ran she away to the hedge,

dâ engegen, dâ Tristan lac;
there against, where Tristan lay;

ir hende sie zusamne sluoc
her hands she together struck

wol drîstunt und rief lûte gnuoc;
well three-times and called loud enough;

alsô sprach die künegîn:
so spoke the queen:

„schû, schû, ir cleinen vogelîn!
„shoo, shoo, you small little-birds!

ir habt uns hie gesungen vil,
you have to-us here sung much,

nu vlieget hin, dâ ich hînt wil
now fly away, where I tonight will

ligen an dem wazzer dort!
lie by the water there!

ir seht wol, ûf des wazzers bort
you see well, on the water's bank

dâ stêt ein linde wolgestalt,
there stands a linden well-shaped,

dar under enspringen manicvalt
there under spring manifold

bluomen gel, blâ unde brûn:
flowers yellow, blue and brown:

aldâ wil ich mîn pavelûn
there will I my pavilion

bî der linden ûf slâhen.
by the linden up strike.

dâ hin sult ir gâhen,
there to shall you hasten,

sitzen ûf die linde,
sit on the linden,

und singet uns dâ swinde
and sing to-us there quickly

vil schône in süezem dône,
very beautifully in sweet tune,

des ich iuch alsô lône:
for-that I you so reward:

ich lâze iuch iuwer lîpnar
I let to-you your livelihood

dâ ligen, swenne ich danne var."
there lie, whenever I then fare."

Diz tet Îsôt umbe daz
This did Isolde for that

Tristan erkente deste baz
Tristan should-know the better

die stat, dâ er kumen hin
the place, where he come thither

solde zu der künegin.
should to the queen.

diz was gar listeclîch getân.
this was very cunningly done.

sie brach ûf und vuor hin dan
she broke up and went away thence

vaste gein des wazzers vluot;
hard toward the water's flood;

dâ liez die küneginne guot
there let the queen good

ûf slahen schône ir gezelt
up strike beautifully her tent

bî die linde ûf daz velt.
by the linden on the field.

der tac sleich hin und quam die nacht.
the day crept away and came the night.

her Tristan wîse und wol bedâcht
sir Tristan wise and well considered

sprach zu Lîfrenîse:
spoke to Lifrenis:

„nu slîch mir nâch gar lîse,
„now creep me after very softly,

unde swâ ich hin gê vor,
and wherever I away go before,

dâ gê mir nâch ûf mînem spor!“
there go me after on my track!“

sie slichen in dem hage hin
they crept in the hedge away

und quâmen, dâ die künegin
and came, where the queen

in ir pavelûnen was.
in her pavilion was.

nu was durch bluomen und durch gras
now was through flowers and through grass

geloufen hin Tantrîsel,
run away Tantrisel,

von einem boume ez rîsel
from a tree it twigs

durch sîne kurzewîle brach.
for its pastime broke.

sîn ôhem ez vil wol ersach
its uncle it very well saw

und begreif ez mit der hant.
and seized it with the hand.

ez sach in an und sprach zuhant:
it looked him at and spoke at-once:

„bist dû daz, lieber ôhem mîn?“
„art thou that, dear uncle my?“

„jâ“, sprach er, „wâ ist die künegîn,
„yes“, spoke he, „where is the queen,

mîn vrouwe clâr, die schœne Isôt?“
my lady bright, the fair Isolde?“

ez sprach: „bî mir sie dir enpôt,
it spoke: „by me she to-thee sent,

swenne sich die vrouwelîche schar
whenever itself the womanly company

gelegete und daz gesinde gar,
laid and the household wholly,

sô sal ich blâsen diz hornelîn,
so shall I blow this little-horn,

sô solt dû und Kâedîn
so shalt thou and Kaedin

in daz gezelt verholne kumen.“
into the tent secretly come.“

und er die rede het vernumen,
when he the speech had heard,

er jach zu dem kindelîn:
he declared to the little-child:

„nu gê zu ir hin wider în
„now go to her thither back in

und sage ir, daz ich hie sî
and tell her, that I here am

in disem hage ir nâhen bî.“
in this hedge to-her near by.“

Ez gienc und kniete vür sie
It went and knelt before her

und rûnte ir zu; ez weste wol, wie
and whispered to-her to; it knew well, how

ez zu sulchen dingen
it at such things

sîn rede solde vorbringen.
its speech should bring-forth.

ez sprach: „vrouwe, ich iuch daz sage,
it spoke: „lady, I to-you that say,

alhie bî uns in dem hage
here by us in the hedge

ist mîn ôhem Tristant.“
is my uncle Tristan.“

die küneginne sprach zuhant:
the queen spoke at-once:

„seites du im, daz ich dich hiez?“
„toldest thou him, what I thee bade?“

„jâ, und ich des nicht enliez.
„yes, and I of-that not left-off.

swenne er hœret diz hornelîn,
whenever he hears this little-horn,

sô kumet er zu iuch her în.“
so comes he to you hither in.“

die küneginne dô hiez sân
the queen then bade straightway

daz gesinde slâfen gân;
the household to-sleep go;

zu der vrouwelîchen schar
to the womanly company

sprach sie: „nu dar, nu dar, nu dar!
spoke she: „now thither, now thither, now thither!

ieglîche gê an ir gemach!“
each go to her chamber!“

sie giengen ûz; und daz geschach,
they went out; and that happened,

sie alle sie von ir treip,
she all them from her drove,

nieman dar inne bî ir bleip,
no-one there in by her stayed,

wîp noch man, diser noch der,
woman nor man, this-one nor that-one,

wan ir getriuwer kamerer,
except her faithful chamberlain,

der hübsche Paranîsel,
the courtly Paranisel,

und daz kint Tantrîsel.
and the child Tantrisel.

Brangâne und Kamelîne,
Brangaene and Kameline,

zwô megde in lichtem schîne,
two maidens in bright shining,

wâren ouch dar inne bî ir bliben;
were also there in by her stayed;

die anderen het sie ûz getriben.
the others had she out driven.

Tantrîsel blies sîn hornelîn,
Tantrisel blew its little-horn,

Tristan unde Kâedîn
Tristan and Kaedin

den hornschal vernâmen,
the horn-sound heard,

vil schiere sie dô quâmen
very quickly they then came

ûz dem hage über daz velt
out-of the hedge across the field

zu der vrouwen in daz gezelt.
to the lady into the tent.

Isôt die schœne gein in gienc,
Isolde the fair toward them went,

gar minnenclîchen sie enpfienc
very lovingly she received

Tristanden ir amîsen
Tristan her lover

und mit im Lîfrenîsen.
and with him Lifrenis.

under ougen sie lieplîch an sach
under eyes she lovingly at looked

Tristanden lachende unde sprach:
Tristan laughing and spoke:

„sît willekum, mîn bêamîs!
„be welcome, my fair-friend!

und ouch ir, her Lîfrenîs,
and also you, sir Lifrenis,

gote und mir sît willekumen!
to-God and to-me be welcome!

ich weiz ez unde hânz vernumen,
I know it and have-it heard,

daz ir heizet Kâedîn."
that you are-called Kaedin."

dô nigen sie der künegîn
then bowed they to-the queen

und sageten ir grôzen danc.
and said to-her great thanks.

vor dem bette ûf eine banc
before the bed on a bench

gar schône sie dâ nider sâzen,
very beautifully they there down sat,

dar ûf geleget âne mâzen
there on laid without measure

gar tiuwere polster wâren,
very precious bolsters were,

bedecket mit tuochen clâren,
covered with cloths bright,

geworcht ûz edelin sîden.
wrought out-of noble silk.

her Tristan nicht erlîden
sir Tristan not endure

diz sitzen mochte lange,
this sitting might long,

im was ôt ande und ange,
to-him was just grievous and painful,

wie er quême an daz bette hin
how he should-come to the bed thither

und sie mit im die künegin.
and she with him the queen.

Brangâne und Kamelîne
Brangaene and Kameline

die nâmen Kâedîne
they took Kaedin

und satzten in guotlich
and set him kindly

mit schœnen züchten zwischen sich.
with fair breeding between themselves.

lieplîch sie mit im kôseten
lovingly they with him chatted

und sîner rede sie lôseten;
and to-his speech they listened;

diz schuof ir megetlîcher prîs.
this caused their maidenly prize.

Tantrîsel unde Paranîs
Tantrisel and Paranis

die schancten unde guzzen în
they poured and filled in

môraz, clarêt und guoten wîn
mulberry-wine, claret and good wine

und truogen in mit züchten dar
and bore to-them with breeding thither

in köpfen rôt von golde clâr,
in cups red of gold bright,

durchleget mit edelen steinen
inlaid with noble stones

gar tiuweren und reinen
very precious and pure

von manger varwe glander.
of many-a color gleaming.

sie kôseten mit einander,
they chatted with each-other,

jene zwei und dise driu.
those two and these three.

daz hundelîn Petitcriu
the little-dog Petitcriu

daz hête Îsôt in ir schôz
that had Isolde in her lap

und streichete ez mit ir henden blôz.
and stroked it with her hands bare.

sie redete mit Tristande
she talked with Tristan

von liebe manger hande
of love of-many-a kind

und sach im in die ougen
and looked him into the eyes

offenbâr, nicht tougen:
openly, not secretly:

und swaz sie Marken dô verstal,
and whatever she from-Mark then stole,

vor disen sie daz lützel hal,
from these she that little hid,

die bî ir wâren alhie
who by her were here

und ir untriuwe erzeigeten nie.
and to-her faithlessness showed never.

XVII · THE ENCHANTED PILLOW

Tristan goes to bed with the queen. Kameline promises herself to Kaedin, then lays the enchanted pillow under his head, and he sleeps like a stone. In the morning the others laugh at him, and he laments his lost chance. The friends slip away to Litan, where Tristan falls sick. Tantrisel advises him to visit Isolde disguised as a fool.

Swie vil die minnenclîche Isôt
However much the lovely Isolde

Tristande süezer rede bôt,
to-Tristan of-sweet speech offered,

doch stuont im herze unde sin
yet stood to-him heart and mind

alles an daz bette hin.
all to the bed thither.

dar umbe sprach her Tristân:
there for spoke sir Tristan:

„wol ûf, wir sullen slâfen gân!“
„well up, we shall to-sleep go!“

dô sprach der geselle sîn:
then spoke the companion his:

„wâ lige ich armer Kâedîn,
„where lie I poor Kaedin,

enlender gast dis landes?
foreign guest of-this land?

mîn und hern Tristandes
my and sir Tristan's

nachtsedel werden nindert glîch.“
night-seats become nowhere alike.“

dô sprach Isôt gar tugentlîch:
then spoke Isolde very virtuously:

„wes schimpfet ir, er jungelinc?
„why jest you, sir youth?

ich weiz wol, daz ir iuwer dinc
I know well, that you your affair

habet beredet mit in zwein,
have arranged with them two,

daz vil lîchte under in ir ein
that very likely among them of-them one

noch hînt wirt iuwer bettegenôz.“
still tonight becomes your bed-companion.“

„sô wêre mîn gelücke grôz“,
„so would-be my luck great“,

sprach er; „doch zwîvel ich dar an,
spoke he; „yet doubt I there on,

wen ich sîn nicht geworben hân.“
for I of-it not wooed have.“

„geworben?“ sprach die künegîn.
„wooed?“ spoke the queen.

„nein, vrouwe“, sprach dô Kâedîn,
„no, lady“, spoke then Kaedin,

„leider ich enhânz geworben nicht.“
„alas I have-it wooed not.“

„aldester wirser iuch geschicht:
„all-the worse to-you happens:

habet ir sîn nicht geworben,
(if)-have you of-it not wooed,

sô mac ez sîn vortorben;
so may it be spoiled;

wan manic dinc vertirbet,
for many-a thing spoils,

des man nicht enwirbet,
which one not woos,

daz nimmer vorturbe,
that never would-spoil,

der ez mit vlîze wurbe.
who it with diligence should-woo.

gedenket an daz sprichwort
think of the proverb

und habet in herzen muotes hort
and have in heart of-spirit hoard

und versuochet ez noch baz:
and try it still better:

unvorsuochet, waz touc daz?
untried, what avails that?

Brangâne und Kamelîne,
Brangaene and Kameline,

die sint in sulchem schîne
they are in such shining

und alsô minnenclîch gestalt,
and so lovely shaped,

daz sie vröuden manicvalt
that they joys manifold

wol mugen geben einem man,
well may give to-a man,

der umb ir hulde werben kan."
who for their favor woo can."

sie wincte Kamelînen,
she winked to-Kameline,

der kiuschen und der fînen
the chaste and the fine

des lîbes und des herzen,
of-the body and of-the heart,

die âne valsches smerzen
who without of-falseness pain

was vollenkumen ein maget clâr,
was perfect a maiden bright,

und warf ir ein küssel dar
and threw her a little-cushion thither

und sprach: „Kamelîne,
and spoke: „Kameline,

diz küssel Kâedîne
this little-cushion for-Kaedin

dû lege under daz houbet sîn,
thou lay under the head his,

daz er dâ bî gedenke mîn
that he there by think of-me

noch hînt und hern Tristandes,
still tonight and of-sir Tristan,

wen er ein gast des landes
for he a guest of-the land

ist; dar umbe man im sol
is; there for one for-him shall

betten hêrlîch unde wol."
bed-make lordly and well."

der maget daz küssel wol bekant
to-the maiden the little-cushion well known

was und vorstuont sich zuhant,
was and understood herself at-once,

war umb ez ir geworfen wart,
for what it to-her thrown was,

sie weste vil wol ouch sîn art.
she knew very well also its nature.

Her Tristan gienc zu bette hin
Sir Tristan went to bed away

und sie mit im die künigin.
and she with him the queen.

swes sie dâ begonden nu,
of-what they there began now,

dâ vüeget mir nicht zu redene zu.
there befits me not to speak to.

dise vünfe bliben hie;
these five stayed here;

zu einander sâzen sie:
to each-other sat they:

die maget Kamelîne
the maiden Kameline

die saz zu Kâedîne,
she sat to Kaedin,

dem jungen Lîfrenîsen;
the young Lifrenis;

sie wolde im zucht bewîsen,
she would to-him breeding show,

der ir in herzen nie gebrast,
which to-her in heart never lacked,

wen er ein enlender gast
for he a foreign guest

aldâ was in dem lande.
there was in the land.

mit rede manger hande
with speech of-many-a kind

kurzte sie im die stunde
shortened she for-him the hour

sô lange, unz er begunde
so long, until he began

werben umb ir minne;
woo for her love;

ûz megetlîchem sinne
out-of maidenly mind

konde sie guotlîch im versagen.
could she kindly him refuse.

her begonde ôt vürbaz jagen
he began just further hunt

mit süezer rede vaste dar
with sweet speech hard thither

4900 und erbat die maget clâr,
and won-by-asking the maiden bright,

daz sie ir minne im gehiez
that she her love him promised

und ez doch nicht wâr enliez.
and it yet not true let.

sie vuorte in an ein bette
she led him to a bed

und jach, daz er enpfette
and declared, that he should-undress

4905 sich und legete sich dar în,
himself and lay himself there in,

sie wolde sîn slâfgeselle sîn;
she would his sleep-companion be;

des wart er inninclîchen vrô.
of-that became he heartily glad.

her legete sich an daz bette dô
he laid himself on the bed then

in lieber hoffenunge.
in dear hope.

4910 nu nam die maget junge
now took the maiden young

der zouberîe küsselîn
the magic's little-cushion

und legete ez under daz houbet sîn:
and laid it under the head his:

zuhant gelac er als ein stoc
at-once lay he as a stock

oder als ein erstochen boc —
or as a stabbed buck—

mit urloube ich daz sagen muoz.
with leave I that say must.

her enregete weder hant noch vuoz;
he stirred neither hand nor foot;

ûf dem küssel er entslief.
on the little-cushion he fell-asleep.

die schœne Kamelîne lief
the fair Kameline ran

hin zu Brangânen wider
away to Brangaene back

und legte sich an ir bette nider.
and laid herself on her bed down.

dô legete sich Tantrîsel
then laid himself Tantrisel

zusamme und Paranîsel.
together and Paranisel.

Dô nû die nacht ein ende nam
When now the night an end took

und die sunne wunnesam
and the sun delightful

ûf gienc durch daz morgenrôt,
up went through the morning-red,

her Tristan und die blunde Isôt
sir Tristan and the blonde Isolde

von dem bette giengen,
from the bed went,

einander sie geviengen
each-other they caught

bî den handen gar lieplîch
by the hands very lovingly

unde giengen wunnenclîch
and went delightfully

mit vröuden âne pîne
with joys without pain

dort hin, dâ Kamelîne
there away, where Kameline

lac und ouch Brangâne,
lay and also Brangaene,

zwô megde wolgetâne;
two maidens well-made;

die beide hiezen sie ûf stân
them both bade they up stand

unde vrâgeten sie sân
and asked them then

von hern Kâedîne.
about sir Kaedin.

dô sagete in Kamelîne
then told them Kameline

alle die gelegenheit.
all the situation.

und als sie in ez het geseit,
and when she to-them it had told,

in iren vröuden her Tristân
in their joys sir Tristan

und vrouwe Îsôt nâmen sân
and lady Isolde took then

Kamelînen zwischen sich
Kameline between themselves

und vuorten sie gar heimelich
and led her very secretly

zu Lîfrenîsen, dâ er lac
to Lifrenis, where he lay

und ûf dem küssel slâfes pflac,
and on the little-cushion of-sleep took-care,

und legten sie an den armen sîn
and laid her in the arms his

und ructen im daz küsselîn
and pulled from-him the little-cushion

ûz dem houbet endelîchen her;
out-of the head promptly hither;

und alzuhant erwachete er.
and at-once woke he.

und als er was erwachet,
and when he was awakened,

geschimpfet und gelachet
jested and laughed

wart ob im dô harte vil.
was over him then very much.

sie enhêten zwâr kein ander spil
they had truly no other game

vür in genumen alhie:
before them taken here:

„wol ûf, wol ûf!“ sprâchen sie,
„well up, well up!“ spoke they,

„her briutegum und iuwer brût,
„sir bridegroom and your bride,

her Kâedîn und iuwer trût,
sir Kaedin and your beloved,

ir habet lange gnuoc gelegen,
you have long enough lain,

minne und slâfes gepflegen.“
love and sleep practiced.“

Kâedîn dô swinde erschrac,
Kaedin then sharply took-fright,
dô im die minnenclîche lac
when to-him the lovely-one lay
in ir wât an dem armen sîn.
in her clothing in the arms his.
„zêther über daz leben mîn!“
„woe over the life my!“
sprach er; „waz hân ich getân?
spoke he; „what have I done?
hân ich die schœne maget gelân,
(if)-have I the fair maiden left,
wê mir hiute und immer wê!
woe me today and ever woe!
daz überwinde ich nimmer mê
that overcome I never more
gein megden noch gein wîben;
toward maidens nor toward women;
ich muoz immer blîben
I must ever remain
ungevröuwet von in.“
unrejoiced by them.“
die maget stuont ûf und gienc hin
the maiden stood up and went away
von im; hin wider sie dô sach
from him; away back she then looked
im under ougen unde sprach:
him under eyes and spoke:
„kunnet ir megde triuten?
„can you maidens caress?
wêrlîch ir soldet riuten
truly you should clear-land
billîcher dort in jenem hage,
more-fittingly there in that hedge,

wan daz ir liget als ein zage
than that you lie as a coward

bî einer minnenclîchen maget.“
beside a lovely maiden.“

nu hête ez ouch sô wol getaget,
now had it also so well dawned,

daz allez daz gesinde
that all the household

von kinde zu kinde
from child to child

ûz dem slâfe erwachete
out-of the sleep awoke

und sich von bette machete.
and itself from bed made.

nû muoste aber her Tristan
now must again sir Tristan

von der küneginne dan
from the queen thence

in liebe und ouch in leiden
in love and also in sorrows

gar heimelîchen scheiden.
very secretly part.

iedoch schiet er minnenclîch
yet parted he lovingly

von der vrouwen tugenderîch;
from the lady virtue-rich;

er gap ir mangen umbevanc,
he gave her many-a embrace,

als in die herzenliebe twanc,
as him the heart's-love forced,

und kuste sie wol hundertstunt
and kissed her well hundred-times

an iren viuwerrôten munt
on her fire-red mouth

und bôt ir sînen süezen segen
and offered her his sweet blessing

und bat got ir êren pflegen.
and bade God her honor to-keep.

hin schiet er unde Kâedîn,
away parted he and Kaedin,

der wêrlîch in dem herzen sîn
who truly in the heart his

truoc jâmer unde herzenleit,
bore misery and heart's-sorrow,

durch daz er die schœne meit,
for that he the fair maiden,

die clâren Kamelînen,
the bright Kameline,

die reinen und die fînen,
the pure and the fine,

nicht zu wîbe het gewunnen.
not as wife had won.

dô sie nû entrunnen
when they now escaped

gar heimelîche von dan,
very secretly from thence,

Lîfrenîs und Tristan,
Lifrenis and Tristan,

durch den hac in ein tal,
through the hedge into a valley,

in dem grunde Kurvenal
in the bottom Kurvenal

gewartet hête der werden
waited had for-the worthy-ones

selbander mit den pferden.
himself-the-second with the palfreys.

sie sâzen ûf und riten hin
they sat up and rode away

durch ires lebenes gewin
for their life's gain

gein Litan, dâ Tinas
toward Litan, where Tinas

ir rechter vriunt mit hûse was.
their true friend with house was.

Waz tet sie nû die künegin?
What did she now the queen?

sie vuor ôt über daz wazzer hin
she went just over the water away

zu dem künege Marken,
to the king Mark,

der in sîns herzen arken
who in his heart's ark

sie nû mit triuwen meinte,
her now with faithfulness cherished,

daz er ir wol erscheinte
that he to-her well showed

mit mangerhande dingen.
with many-a-kind things.

wie disen jungelingen
how to-these youths

gelunge hie zu Litan?
succeeded here at Litan?

ich wol iuch daz bescheiden kan:
I well to-you that relate can:

dô wart der edele Tristant
then became the noble Tristan

aldâ siech sâ zuhant.
there sick straightway at-once.

er siechte unde sochte
he sickened and ailed

sô lange, daz im tochte
so long, that to-him availed

zu vröuden wênic sîn leben.
for joys little his life.

doch wolde im unser schepfer geben
yet would to-him our creator give

die genâde, daz er genas.
the grace, that he recovered.

und der getriuwe Tinas
and the faithful Tinas

der tet im ie daz beste.
he did to-him ever the best.

die küneginne weste
the queen knew

alle sîne siuche wol.
all his sickness well.

und sie was nû zu Tintajol
and she was now at Tintagel

von dem blanken lande kumen
from the white land come

und sie hête vernumen
and she had heard

von Tinâse dem Litanois,
from Tinas the man-of-Litan,

daz Tristan der kurtois
that Tristan the courteous

was von siuche alsô kranc,
was from sickness so weak,

die krancheit sie von herzen twanc
the weakness her from heart forced

und truoc der siuche smerzen
and bore the sickness's pain

mit im an dem herzen;
with him at the heart;

sie sande im Paranîsel
she sent him Paranisel

zu boten und Tantrîsel,
as messenger and Tantrisel,

die brâchten im erznîe,
they brought him medicine,

die im die valsches vrîe
which to-him the of-falseness free

sande, sîn amîe Isôt.
sent, his beloved Isolde.

dicke und ofte sie im enpôt,
often and often she to-him sent,

daz sie den selben smerzen
that she the same pain

mit im an dem herzen
with him at the heart

dolte, den er trüege.
suffered, which he should-bear.

Tantrîsel was gevüege
Tantrisel was skillful

und warb ez allez heimelich.
and conveyed it all secretly.

Tristan begonde bezzern sich
Tristan began better himself

und kobern an dem lîbe,
and recover in the body,

wan von dem zarten wîbe
for by the tender woman

wart sîn verrens wol gepflegen.
was his from-afar well cared-for.

dô wol genesen was der degen
when well recovered was the warrior

und kumen von der siuche gar,
and come from the sickness wholly,

sîn reidez hâr er abe schar.
his curly hair he off shore.

Dô quam ouch Tantrîsel,
Then came also Tantrisel,

der triuwen amîsel,
the faithfulness's little-lover,

her geriten zu Litan.
hither ridden to Litan.

und ez Tristant des êrsten an
when it Tristan of-the first at

mit innenclîchen ougen sach,
with heartfelt eyes looked,

er enpfienc ez unde sprach
he received it and spoke

siufzende zu dem kindelîn:
sighing to the little-child:

„wie gehabet sich die künegîn?“
„how bears itself the queen?“

daz kindel sprach: „waz siufzes du?
the little-child spoke: „what sighest thou?

vil lieber ôhem, daz sage mir nu!“
very dear uncle, that tell me now!“

daz kint er siufzende an sach:
the child he sighing at looked:

„vil liebez kindel“, er jach,
„very dear little-child“, he declared,

„leider mir tuot siufzens nôt,
„alas to-me does of-sighing need,

daz ich die minnenclîche Isôt,
that I the lovely Isolde,

die künegîn mîn vrouwen
the queen my lady

sol nimmer mê beschouwen
shall never more behold

und muoz in disen leiden
and must in these sorrows

sus von dem lande scheiden.“
thus from the land part.“

daz kint sprach: „ôhem, gehabe dich wol,
the child spoke: „uncle, bear thyself well,

dar zu ich dir wol râten sol
there to I thee well counsel shall

unde wil dir wêrlîch sagen,
and will to-thee truly say,

daz du sie bî dînen tagen
that thou her in thy days

nie mochtes alsô wol gesehen
never mightest so well see

sam nû.“ „wie möchte daz geschehen?“
as now.“ „how might that happen?“

sprach er, „du redist als ein kint,
spoke he, „thou speakest as a child,

wan dû bist noch an witzen blint.“
for thou art still in wits blind.“

daz sinnege Tantrîsel
the sensible Tantrisel

„des sî mîn lîp dîn gîsel“,
„of-that be my body thy hostage“,

sprach ez, „ôhem Tristant,
spoke it, „uncle Tristan,

und mîn wârheit dîn pfant,
and my truth thy pledge,

daz du mîne vrouwen
that thou my lady

nâch dînem willen schouwen
after thy will behold

macht, ob dû wilt volgen mir,
mayest, if thou wilt follow me,

des trûwe ich wol gehelfen dir.“
of-that trust I well to-help thee.“

er jach: „vil liebez kindelîn,
he declared: „very dear little-child,

sage an, waz ist der rât dîn?“
say on, what is the counsel thy:“

Tantrîsel was mit rede balt;
Tantrisel was with speech bold;

ez sprach: „ôhem, du bist gestalt
it spoke: „uncle, thou art shaped

glîch einem rechten tôren
like a true fool

an houbte, an glanze, an ôren:
in head, in sheen, in ears:

daz vleisch ist dir entwichen,
the flesh is from-thee shrunk,

die varwe ist dir verblichen,
the color is to-thee faded,

dîn ougen sint dir în gesmogen,
thy eyes are to-thee in crept,

dîn nase ist dir ûz gebogen,
thy nose is to-thee out bent,

dîn stirne und dîne wangen
thy forehead and thy cheeks

mit runzelen sint bevangen,
with wrinkles are caught,

dîn lîp ist dürre unde mager,
thy body is dry and lean,

dîn antlitz bleich unde hager,
thy face pale and haggard,

dîn hals ist cleine unde lanc:
thy neck is thin and long:

mache nu tœrisch dînen ganc
make now foolish thy gait

und lege narrencleider an,
and lay fool's-clothes on,

sô sprechen wîp unde man,
so speak women and men,

du sîs ein gief, swer dich gesicht.
thou be a gawk, whoever thee sees.

du ensolt wîslîch gebâren nicht;
thou shalt wisely behave not;

du habe tœrische site
thou have foolish manner

und rede nerrische hie mite,
and speak foolish-things here with,

sô wirt den liuten unbekant,
so becomes to-the people unknown,

daz dûz bist, her Tristant,
that thou-it art, sir Tristan,

sô macht du vür den künic gên
so mayest thou before the king go

und vür die küneginne stên,
and before the queen stand,

sô wênen sie in alle wîs,
so think they in all ways,

daz dûz ein rechter tôre sîs."
that thou-it a true fool be."

Tristan comes to Tintagel in fool's clothes with a club and a cheese and mocks the king. When he flings cheese at the queen and Mark pulls his ears, he swings at the king; Antret steps into the blow and is struck deaf. Tantrisel tells Isolde who the fool is. At table he blinds the dwarf Melot with boiling pepper sauce. Mark rides out hunting. The fool calls himself Peilnetosi, which Isolde reads backward as Isolde's love. At night she has Brangaene bring him to her bed.

Her Tristan wart der mêre vrô
Sir Tristan became of-the tidings glad
und sprach zu dem kinde alsô:
and spoke to the child so:
„nu habe danc, vil liebez kint,
„now have thanks, very dear child,
dû bist nicht an witzen blint;
thou art not in wits blind;
wêrlîch, du hâst mir wâr geseit."
truly, thou hast to-me true said."
er hiez im ein tôrencleit
he bade for-him a fool's-garment
an der stete machen:
on the spot make:
von wunderlîchen sachen
of wondrous matters
einen roc seltsên getân
a coat strangely made
und eine gugelen dar an
and a cowl there on
ûz snœdem tuoche, daz was grâ;
out-of mean cloth, that was gray;

dar ûf gesniten hie und dâ
there on cut here and there

narrenbilde ûz rôter wât,
fool-figures out-of red cloth,

daz nieman gesehen hât
that no-one seen has

sô tœrisch einen roc gestalt.
so foolishly a coat shaped.

den legete an der degen balt,
it put on the warrior bold,

der nie tôren wart genôz,
who never to-fools became peer,

und nam einen kolben grôz
and took a club great

und michel gnuoc in sîne hant;
and large enough into his hand;

und einen kêse hiez Tristant
and a cheese bade Tristan

legen in sîn gugelîn,
lay in his little-cowl,

sô er weichest mochte sîn.
as it softest might be.

zu Tinâse von Litan
to Tinas of Litan

nam er urloup und schiet von dan.
took he leave and parted from thence.

Kurvenal und Kâedîn
Kurvenal and Kaedin

die muosten aldâ beiten sîn.
they must there wait for-him.

sus kêrte er dan und weste wol
thus turned he thence and knew well

den rechten wec gein Tintajol.
the right way toward Tintagel.

des êrsten dô er in die stat
of-the first when he into the town

alsô tœrischen trat
so foolishly stepped

und alsô nerrisch was gestalt,
and so foolishly was shaped,

man und vrouwen, junc und alt,
men and ladies, young and old,

die liefen alle gein im sân
they ran all toward him then

und kaften disen narren an,
and gaped this fool at,

und swenne er den kolben zôch,
and whenever he the club drew,

ieglîchez vaste von im vlôch.
each hard from him fled.

sus quam er ûf die burc hin,
thus came he up the castle thither,

dâ sie saz die künegin
where she sat the queen

und dâ der künic bî ir saz.
and where the king by her sat.

der wîse tôre nicht vergaz,
the wise fool not forgot,

als in Tantrîsel lêrte;
as him Tantrisel taught;

sînen ganc er ouch verkêrte,
his gait he also perverted,

sîn houbt begonde er vaste wegen
his head began he hard shake

unde mit den vüezen schregen.
and with the feet straddle.

sus gienc er gîgengarren
thus went he fiddle-gawking

glîch einem rechten narren:
like a true fool:

gar tœrisch wâren sîne trite
very foolish were his steps

und nerrisch alle sîne site.
and foolish all his manners.

Und er die künegîn an sach,
When he the queen at looked,

mit nerrischer stimme er sprach:
with foolish voice he spoke:

„go, go, go, go, go, go, got
„go, go, go, go, go, go, God

grüeze iuch, vrouwe, sunder spot;
greet you, lady, without mockery;

sît irz die küneginne,
(if)-are you-it the queen,

sô gebet mir iuwere minne."
so give me your love."

allachende sprach sie:
all-laughing spoke she:

„guot man, der künic sitzet alhie."
„good man, the king sits here."

den künic er tœrisch an sach,
the king he foolishly at looked,

er vingerzeigete ûf in und sprach:
he finger-pointed at him and spoke:

„phiu! sol der ein künic sîn?
„fie! shall he a king be?

er wêre kûme ein künegelîn
he were barely a kinglet

bî mir, als ich ein künic bin."
beside me, as I a king am."

der künic und die künegin
the king and the queen

begonden vaste lachen nu.
began hard laugh now.

daz hovegesinde lief allez zu
the court-household ran all to

und sâhen disen narren an.
and looked this fool at.

dô greif er in die gugelen sân
then reached he into the cowl then

und nam den kêse in sîne hant;
and took the cheese into his hand;

der willetôre her Tristant
the willful-fool sir Tristan

greif sô grimmeclîch dar în,
gripped so grimly there in,

daz im durch die vinger sîn
that to-him through the fingers his

ran daz kêsewazzer.
ran the whey.

sîn tôrenroc wart nazzer
his fool's-coat became wetter

vor dem herzen hin und her.
before the heart hither and thither.

in den kêse dô beiz er
into the cheese then bit he

in tœrischem sinne
in foolish mind

und warf der küneginne
and threw to-the queen

einen bizzen gein dem munde.
a bite toward the mouth.

daz muote an der stunde
that vexed at the hour

den künic und zôch den tôren
the king and pulled the fool

vaste bî den ôren;
hard by the ears;

in grôzem zorne hiez er in
in great anger bade he him

ziehen von der künegin.
drag from the queen.

der tôre sînen kolben zôch
the fool his club drew

ûf mit beiden henden hôch,
up with both hands high,

nâch dem künege er dô sluoc.
at the king he then struck.

Antret sich dûchte küene gnuoc
Antret himself seemed bold enough

und lief dem künege vür den slac:
and ran to-the king before the blow:

den sluoc er, daz er dâ belac
him struck he, that he there lay-still

unversunnen und betoubet;
senseless and stunned;

er hête in an daz houbet
he had him on the head

troffen alsô swinde;
struck so swiftly;

swaz er im von kinde
whatever he to-him from childhood

hête leides ie getân,
had of-sorrow ever done,

daz mochte er nû gerochen hân.
that might he now avenged have.

er liez mit slegen umbe gân.
he let with blows around go.
sie vluhen alle von im dan:
they fled all from him thence:
der künic und die künegin,
the king and the queen,
einez her, daz ander hin,
one hither, the other thither,
ritter und junchêrren,
knights and squires,
die minren und die mêrren;
the lesser and the greater;
vrouwen und juncvrouwen,
ladies and young-ladies,
die mochte man dâ schouwen
them might one there behold
über einander vallen.
over each-other fall.
iedoch tet er in allen
yet did he to-them all
nicht wen dem einen, der dâ lac,
nothing except to-the one, who there lay,
dem worden was der êrste slac.
to-whom become was the first blow.
der lac noch unversunnen dort,
he lay still senseless there,
ern gehôrte nimmer mê kein wort.
he heard never more any word.
von dem slage des tôren
from the blow of-the fool
wart er toup in den ôren;
became he deaf in the ears;
im tâten gar wê sîne gelide.
to-him did very woe his limbs.

dô sprach der tôre: „nû sî vride!“
then spoke the fool: „now be peace!“

und sach hin gein der künegîn
and looked away toward the queen

und reckete ûf den vinger sîn:
and stretched up the finger his:

„vriundel machen, vriundel machen!“
„little-friend make, little-friend make!“

sprach er und begonde lachen:
spoke he and began laugh:

„nimmer tuon, nimmer tuon!“
„never do, never do!“

ei, süezer Rîwalînes sun,
ah, sweet Riwalin's son,

wie gar ir nû ein narre sît!
how wholly you now a fool are!

ir habet doch alle iuwer zît
you have yet all your time

mê starker lanzen verswant
more strong lances shattered

wan tôrenkolben in der hant
than fool's-club in the hand

getragen nâch der narren site.
carried after the fools' manner.

der künic satzte sich hie mite;
the king set himself here with;

in dûchte, daz des tôren muot
him seemed, that the fool's spirit

hête verzürnet und daz er guot
had out-raged and that he good

wolde gein den liuten sîn.
would toward the people be.

bî im gesaz die künegîn.
beside him sat the queen.

daz kindel Tantrîsel quam;
the little-child Tantrisel came;

die künegîn von im vernam,
the queen from it heard,

daz diser tœrische man
that this foolish man

was ir amîs her Tristan;
was her lover sir Tristan;

daz dûchte sie wunderlîchen gnuoc.
that seemed to-her wondrous enough.

die süeze küneginne kluoc
the sweet queen clever

begonde in minnenclîche an sehen
began him lovingly at look

und mit ir spilenden ougen brehen
and with her playing eyes' shining

tet sie kunt Tristande,
made she known to-Tristan,

daz sie in wol erkande.
that she him well recognized.

Die tische wurden nû bereit,
The tables became now ready,

tuoch und brôt dar ûf geleit.
cloth and bread there on laid.

der künic nam wazzer unde saz
the king took water and sat

mit der künegîn und az;
with the queen and ate;

der tôre mit dem kolben sîn
the fool with the club his

sich satzte zu der künegîn.
himself set to the queen.

er leit dar umbe cleine swêre,
he suffered there for little grief,

swem ez liep oder leit wêre;
to-whom it pleasing or grievous were;

und swaz man dem künege truoc,
and whatever one to-the king bore,

des az im der tôre gnuoc.
of-that ate from-him the fool enough.

ob ez den künic müete,
if it the king vexed,

doch liez er durch sîn güete
yet let he for his goodness

den narren sitzen dâ bî in;
the fool sit there beside them;

und sie die blunde künegin,
and she the blonde queen,

sîns herzen trût, die süeze Isôt,
his heart's beloved, the sweet Isolde,

die sneit im underwîlen brôt
she cut for-him at-times bread

und legete im vür manch guot mursiel,
and laid for-him before many-a good morsel,

die stiez er tœrische in den triel.
those thrust he foolishly into the gullet.

nu sach er vor dem tische stân
now saw he before the table stand

Melôt petit von Aquitân,
Melot petit of Aquitaine,

daz vervluochte getwerc,
the accursed dwarf,

daz im was sam ein blîen berc
who to-him was like a leaden mountain

in ougen und in herzen.
in eyes and in heart.

wie er gevüegete im smerzen,
how he should-contrive to-him pain,

Tristan im des gedâchte.
Tristan him of-that thought.

inredes man brâchte
meanwhile one brought

dem künege ein wiltprête her
to-the king a game-roast hither

und dâ mit einen pfeffer, der
and there with a pepper-sauce, which

was alwallende heiz.
was all-boiling hot.

den nam der tôre, als ich ez weiz,
that took the fool, as I it know,

und sprach dem getwerge zu:
and spoke to-the dwarf to:

„wêningez mennel, sûf ouch du!“
„little little-man, sup also thou!“

den pfeffer alsô heiz er gôz
the pepper-sauce so hot he poured

im under sîn antlitze blôz;
to-him under his face bare;

sîn ougen im verbrunnen,
his eyes to-him burned,

daz sie ûz dem kopfe im runnen.
that they out-of the head to-him ran.

er gedâchte selbe wider sich:
he thought self against himself:

„lâ sîn, ich hân gerochen mich
„let be, I have avenged myself

wol an dem unkunder.“
well on the monster.“

er treip ôt michel wunder
he drove just great wonder

mit tœrischer wîse.
with foolish manner.

dem künege ich daz prîse,
to-the king I that praise,

daz er disen ungevuoc
that he this rudeness

durch sîne tôrheit im vertruoc.
for his folly from-him endured.

Dô man nu gaz und daz geschach,
When one now ate and that happened,

der künic zu sîner vrouwen sprach:
the king to his lady spoke:

„vrouwe, ich wil rîten jagen;
„lady, I will ride hunting;

ich mac in disen acht tagen
I may in these eight days

nicht her wider zu iuch kumen;
not hither back to you come;

werbet hie heime unsern vrumen
manage here at-home our benefit

und pfleget mir des tôren wol,
and take-care for-me of-the fool well,

daz ich immer dienen sol."
which I ever repay shall."

der künic reit hin, der tôre bleip.
the king rode away, the fool stayed.

swaz er nu nerrischeite treip
whatever he now of-foolishness drove

mit rede und mit gebêrden,
with speech and with bearings,

daz enmöchte ûf der erden
that might on the earth

nieman vollenschrîben.
no-one fully-write.

den minnenclîchen wîben
to-the lovely women

vortreip er hie die stunde
passed he here the hour

mit nerrischem munde
with foolish mouth

und ouch mit tœrischem siten.
and also with foolish manner.

nu begonden in die vrouwen biten,
now began him the ladies ask,

daz er in sagte sînen namen.
that he to-them should-tell his name.

er jach: „des wil ich mich nicht schamen:
he declared: „of-that will I me not be-ashamed:

ich heize Peilnetosî
I am-called Peilnetosi

und bin Isôten liep dâ bî.“
and am to-Isolde dear there by.“

die vrouwen sprâchen in der vrist:
the ladies spoke at the time:

„der name dir wol mêzic ist
„the name to-thee well fitting is

und lûtet tœrischen gnuoc.“
and sounds foolishly enough.“

Isôt die küneginne kluoc
Isolde the queen clever

den namen widersinnes las;
the name backwards read;

und waz dar inne verborgen was,
and what there in hidden was,

daz wart ir schiere bekant:
that became to-her quickly known:

Isôtenliep sie drinne vant.
Isolde's-love she therein found.

der küneginne lobesam
to-the queen praiseworthy

begonde lieben der nam,
began please the name,

mit schimpfe was sie dem tôren bî
with jest was she to-the fool near

und nante in ôt Peilnetosî.
and named him just Peilnetosi.

Der tac vergienc und quam die nacht.
The day passed and came the night.

Peilnetosî sich wol bedâcht
Peilnetosi himself well considered

hête, wâ er wolde ligen:
had, where he would lie:

er gienc hin ûf an einer stigen,
he went away up on a stair,

ein narrenstrôel er mit im nam,
a fool's-straw-bed he with him took,

als einem tôren daz gezam.
as to-a fool that befitted.

vür die kemenâten legete er sich
before the chamber laid he himself

dar inne die vrouwe minnenclich
there in the lady lovely

zu slâfen mit dem künege pflac;
to sleep with the king was-wont;

der tôre tœrisch dâ gelac.
the fool foolishly there lay.

sînen kolben, den er truoc,
his club, which he carried,

den smucte er zu im lieplîch gnuoc,
that nestled he to him lovingly enough,

an sînen armen er in twanc
in his arms he it pressed

und huob an unde sanc
and raised on and sang

lûte und nicht gar lîse;
loud and not wholly softly;

in tœrischer wîse
in foolish manner

lac er unde golte,
lay he and yelled,

mit narrenstimme er holte
with fool's-voice he hallooed

und was diz wort ie dâ bî:
and was this word ever there by:

„Tosî, Tosî, Tosî, Tosî!“
„Tosi, Tosi, Tosi, Tosi!“

hie mite rief er genôte
here with called he eagerly

der blunden Isôte.
the blonde Isolde.

die küneginne erhôrte daz,
the queen heard that,

in irem herzen sie daz maz,
in her heart she that measured,

waz bediute diz wort.
what means this word.

sie greif aber an daz ort
she grasped again to the end

des wortes unde las hin wider;
of-the word and read back again;

dô vant sie verborgen sider,
then found she hidden afterward,

als ir wîsheit gebôt,
as her wisdom commanded,

ir selbes namen Isôt.
her self's name Isolde.

dô sprach die küneginne sân:
then spoke the queen then:

„wol ûf, wir sulen slâfen gân!“
„well up, we shall to-sleep go!“

mit ir gienc Brangâne,
with her went Brangaene,

die maget wolgetâne.
the maiden well-made.

dô sie nû getrâten
when they now stepped

hin vür die kemenâten,
away before the chamber,

in der tür der tôre lac
in the door the fool lay

und alles sînes golens pflac.
and all his yelling practiced.

Nu was Brangânen unbekant,
Now was to-Brangaene unknown,

daz ez was her Tristant.
that it was sir Tristan.

zu im gar vreideclîch sprach sie:
to him very fiercely spoke she:

„wes liget diser narre hie?
„why lies this fool here?

vrouwe, heizet in gân hin dan!“
lady, bid him go away thence!“

dô sprach die küneginne sân:
then spoke the queen then:

„nu lâz den lieben tôren ligen,
„now let the dear fool lie,

sînes rechtes unvorzigen.“
of-his right undenied.“

„waz rechtes?“ sprach zu ir die maget.
„what right?“ spoke to her the maiden.

„daz sî dir wêrlîch gesaget,“
„that be to-thee truly said,“

sprach Isôt die künegîn,
spoke Isolde the queen,

„er muoz mîn bettegeselle sîn.“
„he must my bed-companion be.“

„pfûch!“ sprach sie, „vrouwe und meinet irz?“
„pah!“ spoke she, „lady and mean you-it?“

„ich meine ez zwâr, geloube mirz.“
„I mean it truly, believe me-it.“

nû gienc ouch die künegîn
now went also the queen

zu der kemenâten în
to the chamber in

und sprach zu Brangânen:
and spoke to Brangaene:

„nu gê mir nâch Tristânen
„now go me after Tristan

und heiz in gên her în zu mir.“
and bid him go hither in to me.“

die maget sprach: „vrouwe, und râset ir?“
the maiden spoke: „lady, and rave you?“

„ich râse nicht ein bunne:
„I rave not a bean:

Tristant, mîns herzen wunne,
Tristan, my heart's bliss,

der liebe man ist uns hie bî
the dear man is to-us here near

und nennet sich Peilnetosî.“
and names himself Peilnetosi.“

Brangâne sprach: „und ist daz wâr?“
Brangaene spoke: „and is that true?“

„jâ!“ sprach Isôt. die maget clâr
„yes!“ spoke Isolde. the maiden bright

gienc, dâ sie Tristânen vant,
went, where she Tristan found,

und nam in lieplîch bî der hant.
and took him lovingly by the hand.

die süeze, sêldenrîche
the sweet, blessing-rich

vuorte in gar minnenclîche
led him very lovingly

hin in die kemenâten;
thither into the chamber;

die tür sie zu tâten.
the door they to did.

Îsôt im ingegin gienc,
Isolde him toward went,

gar minnenclîchen sie in umbvienc.
very lovingly she him embraced.

ouch mac ich wol sprechen, daz
also may I well speak, that

nie wîser man noch tôre baz
never wise man nor fool better

von liebe wart enpfangen.
by love was received.

ir rôsenvarwen wangen
her rose-colored cheeks

die dructe sie an die sînen
those pressed she to the his

und iren munt den finen,
and her mouth the fine,

glanz, viuwervar und rôt,
bright, fire-colored and red,

zu tûsent mâlen sie im bôt,
to thousand times she him offered,

die süeze blunde künigin,
the sweet blonde queen,

und vuorte in an daz bette hin.
and led him to the bed thither.

Brangâne die muoste ûz gân;
Brangaene she must out go;

dô legete sich her Tristân
then laid himself sir Tristan

zu sîner Isôten,
to his Isolde,

an vröuden nicht der tôten.
in joys not of-the dead.

ir lebete herze unde lîp.
to-them lived heart and body.

der liebe man, daz liebe wîp,
the dear man, the dear woman,

die lieben bettegesellen
the dear bed-companions

nu pflegen, swes sie wellen,
now practice, whatever they will,

der liebe Tristan, die liebe Isôt.
the dear Tristan, the dear Isolde.

Antret und petit Melôt
Antret and petit Melot

die mugen in nu nicht geschaden,
they may them now not harm,

wan sie mit schaden sint beladen:
for they with harm are laden:

der eine ist toup, der ander blint.
the one is deaf, the other blind.

Tristan und Isôt nu sint
Tristan and Isolde now are

âne vorchte und âne vâr,
without fear and without danger,

nieman ir tougen nimet nu war.
no-one of-their secrets takes now heed.

XIX · PFELERIN

The fool sleeps by the queen's door and goes to her bed each night until Pfelerin warns her that Mark is coming. Tristan's famous leap betrays him; Pfelerin reads the name backward and gives chase, and Tristan, called to turn for Isolde's sake, kills him with his club and escapes by boat to Litan. Mark reads the name too and knows his nephew, but his men persuade him the fool was a real one, and he lives with Isolde in love until her death. Sailing back to Arundel, Kaedin asks Tristan's counsel: he loves Kassie, wife of Nampotenis of Gamaroch, who keeps her locked in his castle.

Dô sie die nacht gelâgen
When they the night lay

und alles des gepflâgen, 5440
and of-all that practiced,

des liep mit liebe pflegen sol,
which love with love practice shall,

Isôt die zît weste wol,
Isolde the time knew well,

wenne ir vriunt her Tristân
when her friend sir Tristan

solde von dem bette gân.
should from the bed go.

sie hiez in minnenclîch ûf stên
she bade him lovingly up stand

und vür die kemenâten gên
and before the chamber go

hin an die stat, dâ er ê lac
thither to the place, where he before lay

und sînes narrensanges pflac.
and his fool's-song practiced.

nu legete aber her Tristan
now put again sir Tristan

den tôrenroc wider an;
the fool's-coat back on;

sînen kolben er gevienc,
his club he caught,

vür die kemenâten er gienc
before the chamber he went

und legete sich hin wider
and laid himself away again

ûf sîn narrenstrôel nider.
onto his fool's-straw-bed down.

er golte sînen alten sanc,
he yelled his old song,

der tœrisch gnuoc von im erklanc:
which foolishly enough from him rang:

„Tosî, Tosî, Tosî, Tosî!“
„Tosi, Tosi, Tosi, Tosi!“

Brangâne, die maget wandels vrî,
Brangaene, the maiden of-blemish free,

gienc zu der kemenâten în
went to the chamber in

und hiez ûf stên die künegîn.
and bade up stand the queen.

sie stuont ûf und gienc her vür;
she stood up and went hither before;

der tôre lac dâ bî der tür.
the fool lay there by the door.

gar schimpflîche sprach sie:
very jestingly spoke she:

„er narre, liget ir noch hie?“
„sir fool, lie you still here?“

„jâ!“ sprach der tœrische man
„yes!“ spoke the foolish man

und stuont ûf von dem strôel sân,
and stood up from the straw-bed then,

sînen kolben er gevienc,
his club he caught,

und swâ die künegîn hin gienc,
and wherever the queen thither went,

dâ gienc der tôre alles mite.
there went the fool always with.

tœrisch wâren sîne site.
foolish were his manners.

Isôten rûmete er den wec;
for-Isolde cleared he the way;

im sluoc dâ nieman keinen vlec,
him struck there no-one any blow,

als man nu tuot den tôren.
as one now does to-the fools.

in zôch ouch bî den ôren
him pulled also by the ears

nieman wan die schœne Isôt
no-one except the fair Isolde

den schimpf im underwîlen bôt,
the jest to-him at-times offered,

daz sie greif an daz wange sîn.
that she grasped at the cheek his.

„halt mir ein ôrewetschelîn!“
„hold for-me an ear-slap!“

zu dem tôren ofte sie sprach.
to the fool often she spoke.
in rechter liebe daz geschach.
in true love that happened.

in diser tôrenwîse
in this fool's-manner
wart sîn mit guoter spîse
was of-him with good food
und ouch mit tranke wol gepflogen.
and also with drink well taken-care.
den Foitenant lieplîch erzogen
whom Lieutenant lovingly raised
hête in Parmenîe,
had in Parmenie,
der süeze, valsches vrîe,
the sweet, of-falseness free,
der êrenrîche Tristan,
the honor-rich Tristan,
der truoc hie narrencleider an.
he wore here fool's-clothes on.
gar tœrisch wâren sîne site,
very foolish were his manners,
tœrisch gebârte er mit dem trite,
foolishly bore-himself he with the step,
her hête tœrischen ganc,
he had foolish gait,
tœrisch sîn rede und sîn gesanc.
foolish his speech and his song.

Nu lât in gar ein tôre sîn,
Now let him wholly a fool be,
er lac doch bî der künigîn
he lay yet beside the queen
alle nacht gar minnenclich,
all night very lovingly,

unz daz sie muosten scheiden sich,
until that they must part themselves,

der tôre und ouch die künigîn.
the fool and also the queen.

ein ritter der hiez Pfelerîn,
a knight who was-called Pfelerin,

der was in beiden gar gehaz
he was to-them both very hostile

und hête in ouch bewîset daz.
and had to-them also shown that.

her was eins bœsen herzen gnuoc
he was of-an evil heart enough

und was ûf valsche rête kluoc
and was in false counsels clever

und doch des lîbis gar ein man,
and yet of-the body wholly a man,

als ich iz rechte vornumen hân.
as I it rightly heard have.

von dem künege er quam gerant,
from the king he came running,

Isôten her tet bekant,
to-Isolde he made known,

daz der künic wolde kumen.
that the king would come.

nu sie daz hête vornumen,
now she that had heard,

den lieben tôren endelich
the dear fool promptly

hiez sie von dannen heben sich.
bade she from thence raise himself.

daz gêmerlîche scheiden
the miserable parting

tet den gelieben beiden
did to-the lovers both

in herzen innenclîchen wê.
in heart inwardly woe.

Isôt Tristanden nimmer mê
Isolde Tristan never more

gesach, wen dô er nû was tôt,
saw, except when he now was dead,

daz ir zu sterben ouch gebôt.
that to-her to die also commanded.

Her Tristan ûz der bürge hin vor
Sir Tristan out-of the castle away before

gienc die richte durch daz tor
went the straight-way through the gate

in sînem tôrenkleide.
in his fool's-clothing.

iedoch in diser leide
yet in this sorrow

tet der vrische degen junc
did the fresh warrior young

zu dienste Isôten einen sprunc
to service of-Isolde a leap

sô grôz und alsô wîten,
so great and so wide,

daz bî keinen zîten
that at any times

nieman sô wîten sprunc gesach.
no-one so wide leap saw.

Tristan gienc hin. und daz geschach,
Tristan went away. and that happened,

dô sprach der valsche Pfelerîn:
then spoke the false Pfelerin:

„ei, wer mac der tôre sîn?“
„ah, who may the fool be?“

im stuont ein knappe nâhen bî
to-him stood a squire near by

und jach: „er heizet Peilnetosî
and declared: „he is-called Peilnetosi

und ist der hübschten tôren ein,
and is of-the most-courtly fools one,

den sunne oder mâne ie beschein.“
whom sun or moon ever shone-on.“

des namen hête in wunder
of-the name had him wonder

und wunderte in besunder
and wondered him apart

und jach: „swie disem dinge sî,
and declared: „however with-this thing be,

er enheizet nicht Peilnetosî:
he is-called not Peilnetosi:

den sprunc mac nieman hân getân
the leap may no-one have done

wen der verwâzene Tristân.“
except the accursed Tristan.“

Pfelerîn gelêret was;
Pfelerin learned was;

den namen er widersinnes las,
the name he backwards read,

dô wart der name im rechte bekant,
then became the name to-him rightly known,

Isôtenliep er drinne vant.
Isolde's-love he therein found.

und er gelas Isôtenliep,
when he read Isolde's-love,

er jach: „mîns hêrren êren diep,
he declared: „my lord's honor's thief,

her Tristan, der ist hie gewesen.
sir Tristan, he is here been.

wêrlîch, ichn lâze in nicht genesen.
truly, I let him not survive.

wâ nu pfert? wâ nu pfert?
where now palfreys? where now palfreys?

balde her schilt unde swert!
quickly hither shield and sword!

wol ûf alle und sît bereit!
well up all and be ready!

swem mînes hêrren smâcheit
to-whom my lord's disgrace

leit sî, der helfe mir in jagen
grievous be, he help me him hunt

und schaffen, daz er werde erslagen!“
and contrive, that he be slain!“

Pfelerîn zu rosse quam,
Pfelerin to horse came,

mit im manch degen lobesam,
with him many-a warrior praiseworthy,

dem lieber wêre gewesen,
to-whom dearer would-be been,

daz er Tristan wêre genesen,
that he Tristan were survived,

wan daz in ieman slüege tôt;
than that him anyone should-strike dead;

des quam ouch Pfelerîn in nôt,
from-that came also Pfelerin into distress,

wan er reit in allen vor.
for he rode to-them all before.

sie jageten nâch ûf sînem spor;
they hunted after on his track;

er rante und rante, unz daz er sach
he galloped and galloped, until that he saw

Tristanden an er rief und sprach:
Tristan at he called and spoke:

„kêrâ, helt, nu kêre
„turn-ho, hero, now turn

durch aller vrouwen êre!
for all ladies' honor!

bistû genennet Tristan
(if)-art-thou named Tristan

und bist des lîbes ein man,
and art of-the body a man,

sô kêre durch die künegin!“
so turn for the queen!“

Tristan lief alles vür sich hin
Tristan ran ever before himself away

und wolde nicht kêren wider.
and would not turn back.

Pfelerîn rief aber sider:
Pfelerin called again afterward:

„kêrâ durch Isôten,
„turn-ho for Isolde,

die mit ir munde rôten
who with her mouth red

dich in minnenclîcher lust
thee in lovely lust

ofte lieplîch hât gekust!“
often lovingly has kissed!“

und dô genennet wart Isôt,
and when named was Isolde,

daz was ouch Pfelerînes tôt:
that was also Pfelerin's death:

mit sînem kolben sân zuhant
with his club straightway at-once

warf sich umbe her Tristant
turned himself around sir Tristan

und stuont gein Pfelerînen
and stood against Pfelerin

zu wer dem vînde sînen.
in defense to-the foe his.

Pfelerînes ros in truoc
Pfelerin's steed him bore

ûf Tristande nâhen gnuoc.
onto Tristan near enough.

nu sach Tristande Pfelerîn
now looked Tristan Pfelerin

an daz antlitze sîn;
at the face his;

und im rechte wart erkant,
and to-him rightly became known,

daz er ez was her Tristant,
that he it was sir Tristan,

dô hête er gerne gevlogen.
then had he gladly fled.

nû hête ouch Tristan gezogen
now had also Tristan drawn

zu slage sînen kolben uf;
to blow his club up;

daz ros traf er nicht an die huf,
the steed struck he not on the haunch,

er traf ez an daz houbet,
he struck it on the head,

daz ez wart betoubet
that it was stunned

und nider ûf die erden sanc.
and down onto the earth sank.

Pfelerîn von dem rosse spranc,
Pfelerin from the steed sprang,

wan er des herzen was ein man,
for he of-the heart was a man,

und lief manlîch Tristan an.
and ran manfully Tristan at.

Tristâne er kampfes werte;
to-Tristan he combat offered;

mit schilde und ouch mit swerte
with shield and also with sword

gar nîtlîch er gein im gienc.
very hostilely he toward him went.

Tristan mit sînem kolben vienc
Tristan with his club caught

alle sîne slege, wan er was kluoc
all his blows, for he was clever

und konde ouch rechtes schirmes gnuoc.
and knew also of-true fencing enough.

Pfelerîn sluoc; dô sluoc ouch er.
Pfelerin struck; then struck also he.

ê die nâch jagenden her
before the after hunting host

quâmen Pfelerînes,
came of-Pfelerin,

der sun Rîwalînes
the son of-Riwalin

hête im geslagen einen slac,
had to-him struck a blow,

dâ von der nîder tôt gelac.
there from the envier dead lay-still.

her hête im einen slac gezilt,
he had to-him a blow aimed,

dâ von der man, swert unde schilt
there from the man, sword and shield

gelâgen an einem houfen.
lay in a heap.

Tristan begonde loufen
Tristan began run

vaste gein der habe hin
hard toward the harbor away

mêr durch ir êre der künegin
more for her honor of-the queen

wen durch sîns lebenes genist.
than for his life's safety.

Nu was ouch kumen in der vrist
Now was also come at the time

Marke der künic gehiure
Mark the king gentle

zu diser âventiure
to this adventure

und sach, daz Pfelerîn lac tôt;
and saw, that Pfelerin lay dead;

er jach: „wer hât dise nôt
he declared: „who has this distress

gevrumet Pfelerînen?“
done to-Pfelerin?“

vil der gesellen sînen,
many of-the companions his,

die im hêten geholfen jagen
who him had helped hunt

Tristanden, die begonden sagen:
Tristan, they began say:

„ez hât der tôre getân.“
„it has the fool done.“

„war umbe?“ sprach der künic sân.
„for what?“ spoke the king then.

dô was under in keiner,
then was among them none,

der ander noch der einer,
the other nor the one,

der im des wolde verjehen,
who to-him of-it would declare,

war umbe diz dinc wêre geschehen,
for what this thing were happened,

wan sie gemeine wâren
for they together were

Isôten der clâren
to-Isolde the bright

künegîn mit triuwen mite.
queen with faithfulness with.

Tantrîsel ûz kindischem site
Tantrisel out-of childish manner

sprach: „hêrre, er zôch den tôren
spoke: „lord, he pulled the fool

gar vaste bî den ôren,
very hard by the ears,

dô gap der tôre im einen slac
then gave the fool him a blow

und vlôch dâ her in disen hac.
and fled there hither into this hedge.

dô was Pfelerîne gâch
then was to-Pfelerin hasty

und hiez uns alle rennen nâch
and bade us all run after

und ist der schade im geschehen."
and is the harm to-him happened."

der künic dô begonde jehen:
the king then began declare:

„swie ouch disem tôren sî,
„however also with-this fool be,

im wonet grôze manheit bî.
in-him dwells great manliness by.

ich enkan den ritter nicht verklagen;
I can the knight not cease-to-mourn;

wol dan, wir sulen nâch jagen
well thence, we shall after hunt

dem tôren, daz wir in gesehen;
the fool, that we him see;

sô muoz er uns ouch verjehen,
so must he to-us also declare,

wie er heize oder wer er sî."
how he is-called or who he be."

einer sprach: „Peilnetosî
one spoke: „Peilnetosi

hât sich der tôre genant."
has himself the fool named."

„ez ist mîn neve Tristant!"
„it is my nephew Tristan!"

sprach der künic Marke
spoke the king Mark

und wart erzürnet starke,
and was angered strongly,

dô er den namen hin wider las
when he the name back again read

und dar inne verborgen was
and there in hidden was

widersinnes Isôtenliep.
backwards Isolde's-love.

„owê, du rechter minnendiep",
„alas, thou true love-thief",

sprach er, „bist du daz gewesen?
spoke he, „art thou that been?

Tristan, ich lâze dich nicht genesen,
Tristan, I let thee not survive,

und ist daz ich begrîfe dich."
and (if)-is that I seize thee."

er jagete nâch im gar nîtlich.
he hunted after him very hostilely.

sie jageten alle gemeine
they hunted all together

mit im grôz und cleine.
with him great and small.

Tristan was kumen an die habe
Tristan was come to the harbor

und sach, daz ein vischer abe
and saw, that a fisher off

sînem schiffel was gegân;
his little-ship was gone;

in daz schiffel saz Tristân.
into the little-ship sat Tristan.

die jagenden jageten im dô nâch,
the hunting-ones hunted him then after,

in allen was zu im sô gâch
to-them all was to him so hasty

sam dem valken zu dem luoder.
as to-the falcon to the lure.

wâ wart ie bezzer ruoder,
where became ever better oar,

dan sîn kolbe dâ was?
than his club there was?

der half im, daz er genas.
it helped him, that he survived.

er legete sînen tôrenroc
he laid his fool's-coat

an daz uober bî einen stoc;
on the bank by a stump;

swenne der vischer quême,
whenever the fisher should-come,

daz im wol gezême,
that to-him well should-befit,

daz er nême den roc sîn
that he should-take the coat his

zu gelde vür sîn schiffelîn.
as payment for his little-ship.

daz weter daz was stille gnuoc,
the weather it was still enough,

daz cleine schiffel in truoc
the small little-ship him bore

wider hin gein Litân,
back away toward Litan,

dâ er hête gelân
where he had left

Kurvenal und Lîfrenîse,
Kurvenal and Lifrenis,

dô er in tôrenwîse
when he in fool's-manner

was von in gescheiden.
was from them parted.

gar willekum in beiden
very welcome to-them both

was der edele Tristan.
was the noble Tristan.

doch hête er niur ein pfeitel an.
yet had he only a shirt on.

Tinas sîns kumens wart gemeit
Tinas of-his coming became merry

und cleidete in in rîche cleit
and clothed him in rich garment

und pflac sîn, als er solde,
and took-care of-him, as he should,

die wîle er bî im wolde
the while he with him would

aldâ zu Litan blîben,
there at Litan remain,

die zît mit im vertrîben.
the time with him pass.

Ei, was tet nu Marke?
Ah, what did now Mark?

der suochte und vrâgete starke
he searched and asked strongly

hie daz wîp, dort den man
here the woman, there the man

umb sînen neven Tristan.
about his nephew Tristan.

er jach: „der tôre, der uns bî
he declared: „the fool, who with-us near

gewesen ist, Peilnetosî,
been is, Peilnetosi,

daz ist mîn neve Tristant:
that is my nephew Tristan:

daz ist mir wêrlîch bekant."
that is to-me truly known."

dâ wider sprâchens alle
there against spoke-they all

mit gemeinem schalle
with common noise

und jâhen, er solde âne arcwân
and declared, he should without suspicion

die blunde küneginne lân.
the blonde queen leave.

dem künege wart von in gesaget,
to-the king was by them said,

den man dâ hête gejaget,
whom one there had hunted,

der wêre ein rechter tôre gar,
he were a true fool wholly,

sinne und aller witze bar.
of-senses and of-all wits bare.

künic Marke der guote
king Mark the good

ûz einvaltigem muote
out-of simple spirit

sprach: „swîget unde lât daz sîn!“
spoke: „be-silent and let that be!“

und lebte mit der künegîn
and lived with the queen

gar lieplîch unz an iren tôt,
very lovingly until to her death,

den sie doch schiere nam Isôt.
which she yet soon took Isolde.

Urloup nam ouch Tristan
Leave took also Tristan

von Tinâse zu Litan
from Tinas at Litan

und vuor ûf der wilden sê
and went on the wild sea

hin wider gein Arundelê,
away back toward Arundel,

mit im die zwêne gesellen sîn,
with him the two companions his,

Kurvenal und Kâedîn.
Kurvenal and Kaedin.

die wîle daz sie vuoren hin,
the while that they went away,

Kâedîn sprach wider in:
Kaedin spoke toward him:

„vil lieber swâger Tristant,
„very dear brother-in-law Tristan,

tuo dîne triuwe an mir bekant
make thy faithfulness to me known

und rât mir zu einem dinge,
and counsel me to a thing,

daz mir dar an gelinge;
that to-me there in succeed;

daz diene ich immer wider dich."
that repay I ever toward thee."

Tristan sprach: „Kâedîn, nu sprich.
Tristan spoke: „Kaedin, now speak.

swaz du meinest, daz sage mir,
whatever thou meanest, that tell me,

dar zu daz beste râte ich dir."
there to the best counsel I thee."

er jach: „dâ jenehalp der sê,
he declared: „there that-side of-the sea,

dâ stôzet an Arundelê
there borders on Arundel

ein rîchez und ein schœnez lant,
a rich and a fair land,

daz ist Gamaroch genant,
that is Gamaroch named,

dar inne schône erbûwen lît
there in beautifully built lies

ein veste hûs, grôz unde wît
a strong house, great and wide

als unser hûs zu Karke,
as our house at Karke,

daz ist genant Gamarke.
that is named Gamarke.

ûf der bürge ist gesezzen
on the castle is seated

ein degin gar vermezzen,
a warrior very bold,

der mit ritterlîcher tât
who with knightly deed

vil hôher wirde erworben hât
very high worth won has

und dar zu ritterlîchen prîs;
and there to knightly prize;

der ist genant Nampotenîs.
he is named Nampotenis.

sîn manheit ist gar manicvalt,
his manliness is very manifold,

sîn triuwe reine und ane gewalt
his faithfulness pure and in power

ist er wol vürsten genôz
is he well of-princes peer

und mir an adel ebengrôz:
and to-me in nobility even-great:

der hât ein sô schœnez wîp,
he has a so fair wife,

daz nie minnenclîcher lîp
that never lovelier person

von wîbes lîbe ûf erden
from woman's body on earth

geboren torste werden.
born dared become.

die süeze, wandels vrîe
the sweet, of-blemish free

genennet ist Kassîe,
named is Kassie,

gein der mîn herze liebe treit,
toward whom my heart love bears,

wan wir in unser kintheit
for we in our childhood

mit einander sîn gezogen
with each-other are raised

und grôzer liebe hân gepflogen
and great love have practiced

mit einander von kinde unz her.
with each-other from child until hither.

nu ist daz mînes herzen ger,
now is that my heart's desire,

daz ich sie gerne wolde sehen,
that I her gladly would see,

ob mir ein heil möchte geschehen
if to-me a fortune might happen

mit dînem râte, vriunt Tristant."
with thy counsel, friend Tristan."

„wie ist ez umb daz hûs gewant,
„how is it about the house turned,

dâ sie dâ ist?" sprach Tristan.
where she there is?" spoke Tristan.

„des ich dich wol bescheiden kan:
„of-that I thee well inform can:

ûf einem berge hôch erhaben
on a mountain high raised

liget ez und ist al umbegraben
lies it and is all around-dug

mit graben, die gar tief sîn,
with ditches, which very deep are,

und gêt niuwan ein tor dar în.
and goes only one gate there in.

und swenne daz tor geslozzen ist,
and whenever the gate locked is,

sô enwart nie in keiner vrist
so became never at any time

sô kleine ein vogel noch ein mûs,
so small a bird nor a mouse,

der müge kumen in daz hûs:
that might come into the house:

sô gar ist ez vormachet,
so wholly is it made-fast,

vermûret und bedachet.
walled-up and roofed.

der wirt die slüzzel selbe hât;
the host the keys self has;

swenne er ûz rîtet oder gât,
whenever he out rides or goes,

sô lât er ir von im nicht.
so lets he them from him not.

und umb die selbe geschicht
and about the same situation

hân ich sô lange zît vertriben,
have I so long time passed,

daz ich bin ungetrœstet bliben
that I am uncomforted remained

und ungevröuwet von ir.
and unrejoiced by her.

sie treit doch guoten willen mir,
she bears yet good will to-me,

daz weiz ich sicherlîchen wol,
that know I surely well,

ob ichz mit loube sprechen sol.“
if I-it with leave say shall.“

Tristan promises Kaedin his counsel, and the two ride to Gamarke, where Nampotenis receives them as guests. Tristan writes a little letter, which Kaedin lets fall for Kassie to find: when her husband sleeps she is to press his keys into wax and lay it by her door. She does so, and a smith at Karke copies the keys. While Nampotenis hunts, the friends let themselves in, but as they leave Kaedin's garland hat falls into the moat. Nampotenis finds it, forces the truth from his wife, and arms himself and seven of his men.

Dô sprach der edele Tristan:
Then spoke the noble Tristan:

„dar zu ich dir wol râten kan;
„there to I thee well counsel can;

swîc unde habe guoten muot!“
be-silent and have good spirit!“

nu quâmen ouch die helde vruot
now came also the heroes wise

von dem wazzer an daz lant.
from the water onto the land.

Kâedîn tet im bekant,
Kaedin made to-him known,

daz lant heize Gamaroch.
the land is-called Gamaroch.

Tristan sprach: „nu sage mir doch:
Tristan spoke: „now tell me yet:

wâ liget daz hûs, dâ sie ist
where lies the house, where she is

dîns herzen vrouwe?“ und in der vrist
thy heart's lady?“ and at the time

sprach Lîfrenîs Kâedîn:
spoke Lifrenis Kaedin:

„vil schiere wir dar kumen sîn.“
„very quickly we thither come are.“

sie riten vür sich die helde snel
they rode before themselves the heroes quick

und quâmen zu dem kastel.
and came to the castle.

inredes der wirt gemeit
meanwhile the host merry

von der bürge gein in reit;
from the castle toward them rode;

sie beide er wol erkande,
them both he well knew,

Kâedîne und Tristande;
Kaedin and Tristan;

wol weste er, wie sie hiezen,
well knew he, how they were-called,

wan ir lant die stiezen
for their lands they bordered

an einander bî der sê,
on each-other by the sea,

Gamaroch und Arundelê.
Gamaroch and Arundel.

des landes wirt Nampotenîs
of-the land host Nampotenis

durch sînen vürstlîchen prîs
for his princely prize

sîne zucht an in begienc
his breeding toward them performed

und sie gar minnenclîch enpfienc:
and them very lovingly received:

„sît willekum, her Tristant“,
„be welcome, sir Tristan“,

sprach er, „zu mir in diz lant
spoke he, „to me into this land

und iuwer geselle Kâedîn!
and your companion Kaedin!

ir sult mîne geste sîn
you shall my guests be

hînt und vür biz morgen."
tonight and on until tomorrow."

ern was in keinen sorgen
he was in no cares

und getrûwete in des nicht,
and trusted them of-that not,

daz sie dâ würben ichtes icht,
that they there should-woo anything at-all,

die helde als êrenbêre,
the heroes so honorable,

daz wider sîn êre wêre.
that against his honor were.

er vuorte sie ûf die burc hin
he led them up the castle thither

und legete allen sînen sin
and laid all his mind

und allen sînen vlîz dar an,
and all his diligence there on,

als noch tuot ein vrumer man,
as still does an upright man,

wie er ir gepflêge wol,
how he of-them should-take-care well,

sam ein wirt lieber geste sol
as a host of-dear guests shall

zu rechte in sînem hûse pflegen.
by right in his house take-care.

Tristan der sinnenrîche degen
Tristan the wit-rich warrior

gedâchte an Kâedînen,
thought of Kaedin,

den lieben gesellen sînen.
the dear companion his.

wie er alsô gewurbe,
how he so should-woo,

daz im nicht verturbe
that to-him not should-spoil

sîn arbeit und sîn reise:
his labor and his journey:

Tristan der kurteise
Tristan the courteous

schreip ein cleinez brievelîn
wrote a small little-letter

und gap ez dem gesellen sîn
and gave it to-the companion his

und sagete im, waz stuont dar an.
and told him, what stood there on.

Kâedîn sich wol versan,
Kaedin himself well considered,

daz erz der vrouwen solde geben,
that he-it to-the lady should give,

mit swelcher vuoge im daz quême eben.
with whatever contrivance to-him that should-come even.

Der wirt zu tische nû gesaz
The host to table now sat

mit sînen gesten; und er gaz,
with his guests; when he ate,

dô vuorte er die geste dar,
then led he the guests thither,

dâ sie was sîn vrouwe clâr.
where she was his lady bright.

und daz geschach durch sîne zucht,
and that happened for his breeding,

Kâedîn Lovelînes vrucht
Kaedin Jovelin's fruit

daz brievel hête in sîner hant;
the little-letter had in his hand;

der vrouwen schiere wart bekant,
to-the lady quickly became known,

daz daz selbe brievelîn
that the same little-letter

gein ir ein bote solde sîn.
toward her a messenger should be.

Kassîe die vrouwe clâr
Kassie the lady bright

torste iren vriunt nicht offenbâr
dared her friend not openly

mit spilenden ougen an gesehen;
with playing eyes at look;

doch schôz sie underwîlen ein brehen
yet shot she at-times a shining

im mit spilenden ougen,
to-him with playing eyes,

dâ bî er mochte tougen
there by he might secretly

prüeven und erkennen, daz
test and recognize, that

sie dem helde nicht was gehaz.
she to-the hero not was hostile.

sie sâzen unde kôseten,
they sat and chatted,

sie redeten und lôseten
they talked and listened

mit einander minnenclich.
with each-other lovingly.

der wirt, die geste kanten sich
the host, the guests knew themselves

vil wol under einander.
very well among each-other.

Kassîen schîn was glander,
Kassie's shining was gleaming,

die saz und redete nicht vil.
she sat and talked not much.

der wirt des hûses nu wil
the host of-the house now will

und die geste slâfen gân;
and the guests to-sleep go;

er jach: „wir sulen ûf stân!“
he declared: „we shall up stand!“

urloup von der vrouwen sie
leave from the lady they

nâmen; Kâedîn ouch lie
took; Kaedin also let

daz brievel nider vallen.
the little-letter down fall.

des wart under in allen
of-that became among them all

nie kein mensche gewar,
never any person aware,

wan ôt sie die vrouwe clâr.
except just she the lady bright.

die huob ez ûf sân zuhant;
she raised it up straightway at-once;

sie las ez. nû wart ir bekant
she read it. now became to-her known

mit dem lesene dar an:
with the reading there on:

swenne der wirt entsliefe, sân
whenever the host should-fall-asleep, then

solde sie im die slüzzel stelen
should she from-him the keys steal

und solde daz tougenlîchen helen
and should that secretly conceal

und in ein wachs drücken
and into a wax press

und dar ûz wider zücken
and there out-of back pull

und solde daz wachs legen her vür
and should the wax lay out before

ob ir kemenâten tür,
above her chamber's door,

daz Kâedîn dar quême
that Kaedin thither should-come

und er daz wachs dâ nême;
and he the wax there should-take;

daz quême zu gewinne
that should-come to gain

in beiden an ir minne.
to-them both in their love.

Dô sie daz brievel gelas,
When she the little-letter read,

Kassîe wol sô wîse was
Kassie well so wise was

und in irm herzen alsô kluoc,
and in her heart so clever,

daz sie mit listen daz an truoc,
that she with cunning that on arranged,

daz ir von Kâedîne
which to-her by Kaedin

an dem brievelîne
in the little-letter

mit der schrifte was geseit.
with the writing was said.

der wirt nû hête sich geleit,
the host now had himself laid,

Kassîe zu im legete sich.
Kassie to him laid herself.

und er entslief, gar listeclich
when he fell-asleep, very cunningly

sleich sie von im sân zuhant
crept she from him straightway at-once

und gienc, dâ sie die slüzzel vant,
and went, where she the keys found,

stille swîgende als ein dachs
still silent as a badger

und drückete sie in ein wachs,
and pressed them into a wax,

daz hête sie gemachet weich.
that had she made soft.

barvuoz sie gar stille sleich
barefoot she very still crept

und tet gar lîse ûf die tür;
and did very softly open the door;

ûf daz türstudel hin vür
onto the door-post out before

legte sie daz wachs und gienc hin wider
laid she the wax and went thither back

und legte sich an daz bette nider.
and laid herself on the bed down.

Kâedîn in gedanken lac,
Kaedin in thoughts lay,

Tristan mit im gedankes pflac,
Tristan with him of-thought took-care,

ob von der vrouwen daz wêre geschehen,
whether by the lady that were happened,

als ir daz brievel het verjehen.
as to-her the little-letter had declared.

dô allez daz entslâfen was
when all that fallen-asleep was

in gademe und in palas,
in chamber and in palace,

daz dâ lac in dem hûs,
which there lay in the house,

und sich nindert regete ein mûs
and itself nowhere stirred a mouse

und ez quam gein mitternacht,
and it came toward midnight,

Tristan der kluoge und wol bedâcht
Tristan the clever and well considered

der sprach zu Lîfrenîse:
he spoke to Lifrenis:

„stant ûf und slîch gar lîse,
„stand up and creep very softly,

stille swîgende als ein dachs,
still silent as a badger,

und vorsuoche, ob daz wachs
and try, whether the wax

ûf daz türstudel sî geleit."
onto the door-post be laid."

dô sleich er hin mit kündikeit,
then crept he away with cleverness,

er vant daz wachs und wart vrô;
he found the wax and became glad;

er nam ez unde kêrte dô
he took it and turned then

hin wider zu Tristande,
thither back to Tristan,

den er getriuwe erkande.
whom he faithful knew.

Dô Tristan dise mêre vernam,
When Tristan these tidings heard,

sie wurden beide wunnesam;
they became both blissful;

mit grôzen vröuden lâgen sie
with great joys lay they

unz hin, daz der tac ûf gie.
until away, that the day up went.

der wirt stuont ûf, die geste alsam.
the host stood up, the guests likewise.

her Tristan urloup dô nam
sir Tristan leave then took

und sîn geselle Kâedîn.
and his companion Kaedin.

dô sprach der wirt: „daz mac nicht sîn,
then spoke the host: „that may not be,

zwâr ir müezet enbîzen ê."
truly you must breakfast before."

er behielt sie dâ mit grôzer vlê.
he kept them there with great entreaty.

dô sie nu hêten gezzen,
when they now had eaten,

die helde gar vermezzen
the heroes very bold

dem wirte sageten grôzen danc.
to-the host said great thanks.

ir beiten machten sie nicht lanc;
their waiting made they not long;

sie riten von Gamarke
they rode from Gamarke

die richte hin gein Karke.
the straight-way away toward Karke.

Dô sie zu Karke quâmen
When they to Karke came

und ez ir vriunt vernâmen,
and it their friends heard,

der herzoge Lovelîn
the duke Jovelin

und ouch die süeze herzogîn
and also the sweet duchess

enpfiengen sie lieplîche.
received them lovingly.

Isôt die tugentrîche
Isolde the virtue-rich

die wart ervröuwet innenclich.
she was gladdened heartily.

sie vrouten alle gemeine sich
they rejoiced all together themselves

der lieben zît, der lieben stunt,
of-the dear time, of-the dear hour,

daz die helde wol gesunt
that the heroes well sound

mit sêlden wâren kumen wider.
with blessings were come back.

Tristan mit Isôten sider
Tristan with Isolde afterward

lebte schône und alsô wol,
lived beautifully and so well,

sam ein man zu rechte sol
as a man by right shall

leben mit liebem wîbe:
live with dear woman:

er wart nu gein ir lîbe
he became now toward her body

noch küener wan daz wazzer,
still bolder than the water,

dâ von ir ê wart nazzer
there from her before became wetter

der brûnen bluomen anger,
of-the brown flowers meadow,

der anger, der swanger
the meadow, which pregnant
was der brûnen blüemelîn.
was of-the brown little-flowers.
die rede lâzen wir nu sîn.
the speech let we now be.
Kâedîn sîn wachs truoc
Kaedin his wax bore
zu einem smide künstic gnuoc;
to a smith skillful enough;
der saz zu Karke in der stat.
he sat at Karke in the town.
den smit gar vlîziclîche bat
the smith very diligently bade
der minnegernde Lîfrenîs,
the love-desiring Lifrenis,
daz er im machte in alle wîs
that he for-him should-make in all ways
slüzzele glîch den slüzzelen, die
keys like the keys, which
er gedrücket vant alhie
he pressed found here
in daz wachs bescheidenlich.
into the wax precisely.
er sprach: „meister, vürdert mich
he spoke: „master, further me
mit disem werke in diser zît,
with this work at this time,
des ir von mir getiuret sît
for-which you by me honored are
und ich iuch helfe unde gebe,
and I you help and give,
die wîle ir lebet und ich lebe."
the while you live and I live."

den smit dâ mit erschracter,
the smith there with startled-he,

wan im die karacter
for to-him the characters

wâren alzu meisterlich;
were all-too masterly;

iedoch verstuont er des wol sich,
yet understood he of-that well himself,

daz er daz werc wol kunde,
that he the work well could,

ob er dar zu die stunde
if he there to the hour

und guote muoze hête.
and good leisure had.

der smit sprach: „hêrre, ich tête,
the smith spoke: „lord, I would-do,

daz iuwer wille wêre,
what your will were,

ob mir daz werc sô swêre
if to-me the work so heavy

wêre nicht, alsam ez ist;
were not, as it is;

ich enkan sîn nicht in kurzer vrist
I can of-it not in short time

volbringen, des geloubet mir."
accomplish, of-that believe me."

er sprach: „guot vriunt, lâz sliunen dir
he spoke: „good friend, let hurry thyself

und tuo ez, sô du schierste macht."
and do it, as thou quickest mayest."

der smit sprach: „über vierzehen nacht
the smith spoke: „over fourteen nights
die slüzzel werden bereit."
the keys become ready."
der rede wart Kâedîn gemeit.
of-the speech became Kaedin merry.
Der smit was sîner künste kluoc,
The smith was of-his art clever,
er konde smidewerkes gnuoc.
he could of-smith's-work enough.
über disem werke er îlte,
over this work he hastened,
er smitte, er gruop, er vîlte,
he forged, he engraved, he filed,
unz die slüzzele bereit
until the keys ready
wurden; dô wart ez geseit
became; then was it told
vil balde Kâedîne.
very quickly to-Kaedin.
der nam die slüzzel sîne
he took the keys his
von disem wercmanne
from this workman
und brâchte sie Tristanne
and brought them to-Tristan
und liez in sie schouwen.
and let him them behold.
Tristan sprach: „dîne vrouwen,
Tristan spoke: „thy lady,
die schœnen Kassîen,
the fair Kassie,
dîns herzen amîen,
thy heart's beloved,

die soltu wêrlîch nu sehen."
her shalt-thou truly now see."

er sprach: „wenne sol daz geschehen?
he spoke: „when shall that happen?

daz tuo mir, lieber vriunt, bekant."
that make to-me, dear friend, known."

„ie ê, ie bezzer", sprach Tristant,
„ever sooner, ever better", spoke Tristan,

„biz morgen sul wir rîten dar,
„until tomorrow shall we ride thither,

daz sîn nieman werde gewar,
that of-it no-one become aware,

wâ hin wir kumen oder wâ wir sîn."
where thither we come or where we are."

Tristan unde Kâedîn
Tristan and Kaedin

des morgens vruo von Karke
in-the morning early from Karke

riten gein Gamarke;
rode toward Gamarke;

sie zwêne aleine riten dâ hin
they two alone rode there away

und ein mensche nicht mit in.
and a person not with them.

dô sie geriten den tac,
when they ridden the day,

vür Gamarke in den hac
before Gamarke into the hedge

des nachtes sie dar quâmen;
in-the night they thither came;

herberge sie dâ nâmen,
lodging they there took,

die zwêne helde küene,
the two heroes bold,

under einem boume grüene,
under a tree green,

unz ez des morgens tagete
until it in-the morning dawned

und sie der tac ûf jagete.
and them the day up hunted.

sie lâgen an dem selben tage
they lay on the same day

alles wartende in dem hage,
all waiting in the hedge,

wenne der wirt des hûses rite
when the host of-the house should-ride

Nampotenîs nâch sînem site
Nampotenis after his custom

jagen, als er ê het getân.
hunting, as he before had done.

nu sâhen sie daz tor ûf gân;
now saw they the gate open go;

der wirt des hûses reit her vor
the host of-the house rode hither before

und slôz selbe zu daz tor;
and locked self to the gate;

die slüzzel er bî im behielt.
the keys he with him kept.

Tristan, der ie manheit wielt,
Tristan, who ever manliness wielded,

und sîn geselle Kâedîn
and his companion Kaedin

sâhen alle die gebêrde sîn.
saw all the bearing his.

Er reit über daz gevilde
He rode over the open-field

hin vaste gein der wilde.
away hard toward the wilderness.

und als sie gesâhen in
and when they saw him

rîten vaste von in hin
ride hard from them away

über daz gebirge wol hin dan,
over the mountains well away thence,

Kâedîn und Tristan
Kaedin and Tristan

die quâmen an die burc geriten
they came to the castle ridden

und sluzzen ûf. wîplîcher siten
and locked open. womanly manners

des hûses wirtinne pflac,
the house's hostess practiced,

sie sach sie kumen und erschrac:
she saw them come and took-fright:

„ach!“ sprach daz minnenclîche wîp,
„ah!“ spoke the lovely woman,

„ir welt verliesen mir den lîp
„you will lose for-me the life

und iuch selber iuwer leben.“
and for-you self your life.“

Tristan sprach: „daz sî ergeben
Tristan spoke: „that be given

gote in die gewalt sîn.“
to-God into the power his.“

Lîfrenîs Kâedîn
Lifrenis Kaedin

die vrouwen hête schiere ermant,
the lady had quickly reminded,

daz im ir minne wart bekant,
that to-him her love became known,

wan er ir in herzen lac
for he to-her in heart lay

und sîner künfte manchen tac
and his coming many-a day

hête minnenclîch begert.
had lovingly desired.

nu vuorte sie den ritter wert
now led she the knight worthy

in eine kemenâten sân,
into a chamber then,

und sîn geselle Tristân
and his companion Tristan

hie ûze bî den vrouwen bleip;
here outside by the ladies stayed;

die zît kurzte er in und vertreip
the time shortened he for-them and passed

mit hübschen dingen sunder zil,
with courtly things without limit,

der er konde mêr dan vil.
of-which he could more than much.

Her Tristan, was iuch ê wol
Sir Tristan, was to-you before well

in dem gezelde bî Tintajol,
in the tent by Tintagel,

dô iuch die küneginne
when to-you the queen

gap ire süeze minne
gave her sweet love

und die maget Kamelîne
and the maiden Kameline

alsô efte Kâedîne
so tricked Kaedin

mit irem zouberküsselîn?
with her magic-little-cushion?

des wil er nû ergetzet sîn.
of-that will he now compensated be.

im ist ouch hie nicht alzu wê,
to-him is also here not all-too woe,

swie ez im dar nâch ergê.
however it to-him there after goes.

ir edele süeze minne,
her noble sweet love,

der Nampotenisinne,
of-the Nampotenis-wife,

die koufte er leider tiure gnuoc,
that bought he alas dearly enough,

als mir dise âventiure gewuoc
as to-me this adventure mentioned

und ich her nâch ez mache kunt.
and I here after it make known.

Kâedîn nicht lange stunt
Kaedin not long while

aldâ bî Kassîen,
there by Kassie,

des wunsches amîen,
the wish's beloved,

in der kemenâten bleip.
in the chamber stayed.

die vorchte in von der vrouwen treip;
the fear him from the lady drove;

er nam urloup und schiet von dan,
he took leave and parted from thence,

mit im sîn vriunt her Tristan,
with him his friend sir Tristan,

der degen manlîch unde vruot.
the warrior manly and wise.

nu hête einen schatehuot
now had a garland-hat

von bluomen glanz unde fîn
of flowers bright and fine

gemachet der hübsche Kâedîn
made the courtly Kaedin

des morgens dort in dem hage;
in-the morning there in the hedge;

den vuorte er uffe, als ich iuch sage,
that wore he on, as I to-you say,

der helt durch sîne hübescheit.
the hero for his courtliness.

und er ûz der bürge reit
when he out-of the castle rode

hin über die zogebrücken,
away over the drawbridge,

strûchen unde nücken
stumble and pitch

begonde sêre sîn ravît:
began sorely his steed:

von dem houbte in der zît
from the head at the time

viel im der huot in den graben,
fell to-him the hat into the ditch,

als wir wol vernumen haben.
as we well heard have.

Er liez in ligen und achte es nicht.
He let it lie and heeded it not.

sie riten hin. ach der geschicht,
they rode away. ah the happening,

die von dem schatehuote
which from the garland-hat

den helden zu unguote
to-the heroes to harm

ûf diser leiden reise enstât!
on this grievous journey arises!

ich wêne ez in an daz leben gât.
I think it them to the life goes.

der wirt des hûses sân zuhant
the host of-the house straightway at-once

quam wider ûf daz hûs gerant,
came back up-to the house running,

Nampotenîs der degen vruot;
Nampotenis the warrior wise;

er sach den leiden schatehuot
he saw the grievous garland-hat

aldort ligen in dem graben.
yonder lie in the ditch.

„mich dunket, daz wir geste haben“,
„me seems, that we guests have“,

sprach er selbe wider sich.
spoke he self to himself.

in grôzem zorne grimmeclich
in great anger grimly

gienc er, dâ die vrouwe saz;
went he, where the lady sat;

er jach: „vrouwe, ich wil wizzen daz,
he declared: „lady, I will know that,

wer hie obene bî iuch sî.“
who here above with you be.“

sie sprach: „aller geste vrî
she spoke: „of-all guests free

sî wir, hêrre, wêrlich.“
are we, lord, truly.“

er suochte und suochte alumbe sich
he searched and searched all-around himself
in allen winkelen hin und her:
in all corners hither and thither:
swaz er gesuochte, nicht vant er;
whatever he searched, nothing found he;
ern vant ôt niemannes dâ.
he found just no-one there.
er gienc zu der vrouwen sâ
he went to the lady then
und jach: „wer ist hie gewesen?
and declared: „who is here been?
ich enlâze iuch nimmer genesen,
I let you never survive,
ob ir die ganzen wârheit
if you the whole truth
mir nicht an stênder stete enseit."
to-me not on standing place tell."
mit grôzem zorne er dô ranc,
with great anger he then struggled,
unz er die vrouwen betwanc,
until he the lady forced,
daz sie im seite alle die geschicht.
that she him told all the happening.
nû was ouch dâ sûmens nicht;
now was also there of-delay nothing;
der wirt sprach: „balde wâpen her!
the host spoke: „quickly arms hither!
wâ nu schilt unde sper?"
where now shield and spear?"
er wart vil schiere an geleit;
he was very quickly on laid;

mit im gewâpent und bereit
with him armed and ready

wurden sibene sîner man,
were seven of-his men,

als er sie beste mochte hân.
as he them best might have.

XXI · THE BLACK SAIL

Nampotenis rides out with his men after the friends, who are unarmed and flee until he calls them back: Tristan by his knighthood and by the ladies and the queen, Kaedin by Kassie. They turn and fight. Nampotenis kills Kaedin, and Tristan kills Nampotenis; of the seven, five fall, one flees, and the last wounds Tristan with a poisoned spear before Tristan kills him. He brings Kaedin's body to Karke, where Kaedin is buried. Dying of the wound, Tristan sends Kurvenal for the queen: a white sail if she comes, a black one if not. Isolde sets sail at once. Isolde of the White Hands sees the white sail but tells him it is black, and he dies.

Der wirt des êrsten rante vor
The host of-the first galloped before

ûz der bürge durch daz tor
out-of the castle through the gate

und nâch im die gesellen sîn.
and after him the companions his.

Tristan unde Kâedîn
Tristan and Kaedin

die wâren kumen durch den hac;
they were come through the hedge;

ieglîcher keiner sorgen pflac,
each no cares practiced,

sie wânten rîten âne vâr.
they thought to-ride without danger.

nu was ouch ûf sie kumen gar
now was also upon them come wholly

Nampotenîs und die sîne.
Nampotenis and the his.

Tristâne und Kâedîne
to-Tristan and to-Kaedin

wart vil schiere dô bekant,
became very quickly then known,

daz jene quâmen ûf sie gerant.
that those came upon them galloping.

die helde sâhen in der zît,
the heroes saw at the time,

daz in tochte dô kein strît,
that them availed then no battle,

wan sie wâren kumen dar
for they were come thither

blôz und aller wâpen bar.
bare and of-all arms bare.

nicht mêr wer die helde wert
not more defense the heroes worthy

hêten denne zwei scharfe swert
had than two sharp swords

und wâren dâ des landes geste;
and were there of-the land guests;

vliehen dûchte sie daz beste.
to-flee seemed to-them the best.

die zwêne helde hôchgeborn
the two heroes high-born

in die ros mit den sporn
into the steeds with the spurs

zu beiden sîten sluogen.
on both sides struck.

ir snellen ros die truogen
their swift steeds they bore

Tristâne und Lîfrenîse
Tristan and Lifrenis

von Nampotenîse
from Nampotenis

über daz gevilde hin.
over the open-field away.

sie wêren wol entrunnen in;
they were well escaped them;

dô rief ouch Nampotenîs:
then called also Nampotenis:

„Tristan, durch ritterlîchen prîs
„Tristan, for knightly prize

kêre gein mir, kêre
turn toward me, turn

durch aller vrouwen êre,
for all ladies' honor,

kêre durch alle vrouwen
turn for all ladies

und lâz bî wer dich schouwen!
and let at defense thee behold!

kêre durch ir minne,
turn for her love,

der blunden küneginne,
of-the blonde queen,

die genennet ist Isôt
who named is Isolde

und dirz ie minnenclîche erbôt!
and to-thee-it ever lovingly offered!

kêre durch ir lichten schîn!
turn for her bright shining!

sô kêret ir, her Kâedîn,
so turn you, sir Kaedin,

kêret durch Kassîen,
turn for Kassie,

mîn wîp und iuwer amîen!“
my wife and your beloved!“

Kâedîn und Tristant
Kaedin and Tristan

die wurden mit dem ruofe ermant,
they were with the call reminded,

dâ von sie quâmen in nôt.
there from they came into distress.

ir manheit in daz gebôt,
their manliness them that commanded,

den helden gar geslachten,
to-the heroes very well-born,

daz sie gein den achten
that they toward the eight

kêrten in die vreise.
turned into the peril.

Tristan der kurteise
Tristan the courteous

rief aber sîne krîe:
called again his cry:

„Parmenîe! Parmenîe!“
„Parmenie! Parmenie!“

Lîfrenis Kâedîn
Lifrenis Kaedin

rief ouch alhie die krîe sîn:
called also here the cry his:

„hie Arundêl! hie Karke!“
„here Arundel! here Karke!“

„hie Gamarke! hie Gamarke!“
„here Gamarke! here Gamarke!“

rief ir wirt Nampotenîs.
called their host Nampotenis.

Tristan unde Lîfrenîs,
Tristan and Lifrenis,

die helde manlîch unde wert,
the heroes manly and worthy,

ir scharfen snîdegen swert
their sharp cutting swords

zucten von den sîten.
drew from the sides.

ob ich ein langez strîten
if I a long battling

hie gerne machen wolde,
here gladly make would,

als ich zu rechte solde,
as I by right should,

die rede würde mir ein wicht;
the speech would-become to-me a nothing;

wan leider sîn geschach hie nicht,
for alas of-it happened here nothing,

durch daz Tristan und sîn genôz
for that Tristan and his companion

wâren aller wâpen blôz.
were of-all arms bare.

Nampotenîs sân zuhant
Nampotenis straightway at-once

ûf Kâedîne quam gerant
upon Kaedin came galloping

und rach sîn herzenlîchez leit,
and avenged his heartfelt sorrow,

daz aller leide ein überleit
which of-all sorrows an over-sorrow

ist in mannes herzen.
is in man's heart.

den smerzen aller smerzen
the pain of-all pains

Nampotenîs dô selber rach:
Nampotenis then self avenged:

durch Lîfrenîsen er stach
through Lifrenis he thrust

sîn sper unz an sîn schîben:
his spear up to its disk:

der ie reinen wîben
who ever to-pure women

sîn dienest ritterlîch erbôt,
his service knightly offered,

der lac hie durch die minne tôt,
he lay here for the love dead,

der reine süeze Kâedîn.
the pure sweet Kaedin.

waz tet nu der geselle sîn,
what did now the companion his,

der ellensrîche Tristant?
the valor-rich Tristan?

der quam rechte als ein helt gerant
he came right as a hero galloping

ûf Nampotenîsen,
upon Nampotenis,

den süezen Lîfrenîsen
the sweet Lifrenis

rach er manlîchen gnuoc.
avenged he manfully enough.

Nampotenîsen er dô sluoc,
Nampotenis he then struck,

den manlîchen degen fier,
the manly warrior fierce,

durch helm und durch hersenier,
through helmet and through mail-hood,

durch houbt, durch hirn, durch swarte,
through head, through brain, through scalp,

daz im ob dem barte
that to-him above the beard

widerwante der slac:
turned-back the blow:

Nampotenîs dô tôt gelac.
Nampotenis then dead lay-still.

Nu was gerochen Kâedîn,
Now was avenged Kaedin,

Tristan mit dem swerte sîn
Tristan with the sword his

liez ôt vaste umbe gân.
let just hard around go.

ez wêre ros oder man,
it were steed or man,

swem her behefte einen slac,
whomever he caught a blow,

zuhant er vor im tôt gelac.
at-once he before him dead lay-still.

als gar grimmelîch er sluoc,
so wholly grimly he struck,

der helt enphienc ouch wunden gnuoc,
the hero received also wounds enough,

tief, michel unde grôz.
deep, large and great.

solde er nicht? er was doch blôz.
should he not? he was yet bare.

dem edelen Tristande
to-the noble Tristan

wêrez nicht ein schande
would-be-it not a disgrace

noch kein laster gewesen,
nor any shame been,

ob er mit vluchte wêre genesen
if he with flight were saved

und wêre gevlogen dannoch.
and were fled even-then.

dô nu der von Gamaroch
when now he of Gamaroch

von sînen henden sterbens pflac
from his hands dying practiced

und Kâedîn ouch tôt gelac,
and Kaedin also dead lay-still,

er vlôch ôt nicht, daz quam dâ von,
he fled just not, that came there from,

daz er was vliehens ungewon.
that he was to-fleeing unused.

die sibene sluogen vaste ûf in,
the seven struck hard upon him,

er sluoc ouch vaste wider hin;
he struck also hard back thither;

ûf sie sluoc er und stach in sie
upon them struck he and thrust into them

und rief: „hie Parmenîe, hie!“
and called: „here Parmenie, here!“

vil grôzer slege ûf in gienc,
very great blows upon him went,

der er etelîchen vienc
of-which he some caught

und schutzte in mit dem swerte.
and shielded himself with the sword.

Tristan dô strîtes werte
Tristan then battle offered

die siben, unz daz sie quâmen in nôt:
the seven, until that they came into distress:

ir vünfe dâ gelâgen tôt,
of-them five there lay dead,

der sechste vlôch; der sibende her
the sixth fled; the seventh hither

quam mit eime gelupten sper
came with a poisoned spear

ûf den Parmenois gerant:
upon the Parmenian galloping:

Rîwalînes sun Tristant
Riwalin's son Tristan

eine wunden dô enphienc,
a wound then received,

die im an daz leben gienc.
which to-him to the life went.

iedoch gelac er dâ nicht tôt,
yet lay-still he there not dead,

den ritter brâchte er ouch in nôt;
the knight brought he also into distress;

der in dâ stach, den sluoc er wider,
who him there thrust, him struck he back,

daz er viel zu der erden nider
that he fell to the earth down

und des grimmen tôdes starp.
and of-the grim death died.

wie nu Tristan gewarp?
how now Tristan fared?

sol ich daz sagen, daz jâmert mich.
shall I that tell, that pains me.

mangen slac und mangen stich
many-a blow and many-a thrust

hête er und was sêre wunt;
had he and was sorely wounded;

iedoch huob er an der stunt
yet raised he at the hour

den tôten Kâedînen,
the dead Kaedin,

den lieben swâger sînen,
the dear brother-in-law his,
vür sich ûf sîn kastelân.
before himself onto his Castilian-horse.
gein Karke vuorte in hin Tristân.
toward Karke led him away Tristan.
Lovelîn, Karsîe und Isôt,
Jovelin, Karsie and Isolde,
dô sie Kâedînen tôt
when they Kaedin dead
sâhen und Tristanden wunt,
saw and Tristan wounded,
wart ie drîn herzen jâmer kunt,
became ever to-three hearts misery known,
daz mochten dise driu wol sîn.
that might these three well be.
grôz jâmer unde grôzen pîn
great misery and great pain
sach man sie erscheinen
saw one them show
mit clagen und mit weinen.
with lamenting and with weeping.
den lieben hêrren sînen,
the dear lord its,
den süezen Kâedînen,
the sweet Kaedin,
daz volc clagete über al.
the folk lamented over all.
und der guote Kurvenal
and the good Kurvenal
der clagete an den stunden
he lamented at the hours
Tristandes verchwunden;
Tristan's mortal-wounds;

die vrumden im in herzen
they caused him in heart

leit unde leides smerzen.
sorrow and sorrow's pain.

wol nâch vürstlîcher art
well after princely manner

Kâedîn zu kirchen wart
Kaedin to church was

getragen unde wart begraben.
carried and was buried.

Tristan, als wir vernumen haben,
Tristan, as we heard have,

der was wunt biz in den tôt
he was wounded until into the death

und ranc ouch mit des tôdes nôt.
and wrestled also with the death's distress.

kein erzenîe im tochte,
no medicine to-him availed,

kein arzt im ouch nicht mochte
no physician to-him also not might

gerâten an den stunden
help at the hours

zu den tôtlîchen wunden.
to the deadly wounds.

daz gelüppe vrumete im smerzen
the poison caused him pain

an lîbe und an dem herzen
in body and in the heart

und bitterlîche quâle.
and bitter torment.

er sprach zu Kurvenâle:
he spoke to Kurvenal:

„Kurvenal, ob dir liep ist
„Kurvenal, if to-thee dear is

mîn leben unde mîn genist,
my life and my safety,

sô var hin gein Tintajol
so fare away toward Tintagel

und wirp, als ich dir sagen sol."
and act, as I thee tell shall."

„Sage mîner vrouwen Isôten,
„Tell my lady Isolde,

man handele mich vür tôten
one treats me as dead

und sî verwundet starke
and be wounded strongly

und lige alhie zu Karke
and lie here at Karke

und enmüge deheine wîs genesen,
and may in-no way recover,

sie enwelle mir genêdic wesen,
unless-she will to-me gracious be,

sô daz sie vare her zu mir.
so that she fare hither to me.

ich enpfele daz besunder dir:
I commend that apart to-thee:

ist daz die bêle blunde Isôt
(if)-is that the fair blonde Isolde

wenden wil mîns tôdes nôt
turn will my death's distress

und wil her von Kurnewal,
and will hither from Cornwall,

mîn vriunt, getriuwer Kurvenal,
my friend, faithful Kurvenal,

sô schaffe daz mit dem marner
so arrange that with the mariner

unde schicke ez sô, daz er
and order it so, that he

einen wîzen segel an binde;
a white sail on bind;

des tôdes ich erwinde,
the death I escape,

ob sie kumt und daz geschicht.
if she comes and that happens.

ist aber, daz sie kumet nicht,
(if)-is however, that she comes not,

sô sol der segel swarz sîn,
so shall the sail black be,

daz mich von dem leben mîn
which me from the life my

scheiden unde bringen mac.“
part and bring may.“

Kurvenal, der ie triuwe pflac,
Kurvenal, who ever faithfulness practiced,

der vuor gein Tintajôle hin;
he went toward Tintagel away;

die leiden mêre der künegin
the grievous tidings to-the queen

mit grôzem jâmer er brâchte.
with great misery he brought.

Isôt sich nicht bedâchte
Isolde herself not considered

weder umbe diz noch umbe daz.
neither about this nor about that.

an daz schif sie snelle saz,
onto the ship she quickly sat,

als mir die âventiure seit;
as to-me the adventure says;

swem ez liep wêre oder leit,
to-whom it pleasing were or grievous,

des achte sie vil cleine:
of-that heeded she very little:

die süeze, wandels eine
the sweet, of-blemish alone

Isôt, die blunde künegin,
Isolde, the blonde queen,

die vuor ôt zu Tristanden hin.
she went just to Tristan thither.

Die wîle pflac sîn Îsôt
The while took-care of-him Isolde

Blanschemanîs, als ir gebôt
Blanschemanis, as her commanded

ir wîplîche güete;
her womanly goodness;

doch enweiz ich, ob siez müete,
yet not-know I, whether her-it vexed,

daz der halptôte Tristant
that the half-dead Tristan

nâch jener Isôten hête gesant,
after that Isolde had sent,

der blunden ûz Irlande.
the blonde-one from Ireland.

Isôt die wîzgehande
Isolde the white-handed

an daz venster ofte trat,
to the window often stepped,

als sie Tristan hiez und bat,
as her Tristan bade and bade,

und nam stêtes vür sich dar
and took constantly before herself thither

des schiffes ûf dem mere war,
of-the ship on the sea heed,

swenne ez gestrichen quême,
whenever it sailing should-come,

daz ez Tristan vornême.
that it Tristan should-hear.

nu sach siez ouch her strîchen.
now saw she-it also hither sail.

sie tet dem tugentrîchen
she made to-the virtue-rich

an der stete sân zuhant
on the spot straightway at-once

die kunft des schiffes bekant;
the coming of-the ship known;

und einen segel wîzen
and a sail white

sweben unde glîzen
hover and gleam

hête sie dar ob gesehen,
had she there above seen,

des sie nicht enwolde verjehen.
of-that she not would declare.

er sprach: „liebe Isôt, sage an:
he spoke: „dear Isolde, say on:

wie ist der segel getân?“
how is the sail made?“

ez wêre ir ernst oder ir schimpf,
it were her earnest or her jest,

ez was ein tœrisch ungelimpf,
it was a foolish unkindness,

daz im von ir die wârheit
that to-him by her the truth

in diser nôt nicht wart geseit.
in this distress not was said.

Gar ernstlîchen sie sprach:
Very earnestly she spoke:

„einen swarzen segel ich sach.“
„a black sail I saw.“

„swarz?“ sprach Tristân. „jâ!“ sprach Isôt,
„black?“ spoke Tristan. „yes!“ spoke Isolde,

und alzuhant gelac er tôt.
and at-once lay-still he dead.

der tôt im daz herze brach
the death to-him the heart broke

sô gâhes, daz er nie gesprach
so suddenly, that he never spoke

diz noch daz, weder ach noch wê.
this nor that, neither ah nor woe.

Isôt gar jêmerlîchen schrê:
Isolde very miserably cried:

„ich hân geschimpfet, Tristân!
„I have jested, Tristan!

der segel ist wîz, den ich dâ hân
the sail is white, which I there have

ûf dem mer aldort gesehen!“
on the sea yonder seen!“

swaz sie gerief, ez was geschehen,
whatever she cried, it was happened,

und swaz sie weinens gepflac,
and whatever she of-weeping practiced,

her Tristan aldâ tôt gelac.
sir Tristan there dead lay-still.

der tôt liez im die muoze nicht,
the death let him the leisure not,

daz vil mangem doch geschicht,
which very to-many-a-one yet happens,

daz er gein der wende
that he toward the wall
sich kêrte und nême sîn ende:
himself turned and should-take his end:
rechte als er lac, gelac er tôt,
right as he lay, lay-still he dead,
dô er die vrâge Isôten bôt,
when he the question to-Isolde offered,
wie der segel wêre getân.
how the sail were made.
Der aller manheit was ein man,
He of-all manliness was a man,
den die reine vrouwe clâr,
whom the pure lady bright,
die süeze Blanschiflûr gebar
the sweet Blanscheflur bore
und mit im gebernde
and with him bearing
ir lebenes enpernde
her life forgoing
leit des bittern tôdes nôt:
suffered of-the bitter death distress:
der lac vor leide in liebe tôt.
he lay for sorrow in love dead.

The poet recalls Tristan's deeds, each ending in death for love. The blonde Isolde, queen of Cornwall, lands to the sound of bells and lamenting and learns that Tristan is dead. She swoons, then, speechless, is led to his bier, lies on him, and dies, her heart breaking. Kurvenal mourns over both and denounces the world, whose sweetness turns to gall.

Der êrenrîche Tristant,
The honor-rich Tristan,

den Rûal li foitenant
whom Rual the lieutenant

zôch sô rechte minnenclich
raised so rightly lovingly

und manges kummers niete sich,
and many-a affliction took-upon himself,

dô er in hête vorlorn,
when he him had lost,

unz er den hêrren ûz erkorn
until he the lord out chosen

bî Marken vant zu Kurnewâle:
with Mark found in Cornwall:

der leit in liebe des tôdes quâle.
he suffered in love of-the death torment.

Tristant der jungelinc vil zart,
Tristan the youth very tender,

der von Marken ritter wart
who by Mark knight became

und in mit Lifoitenande
and him with the-Lieutenant

sande wider heim zu lande
sent back home to land

gein Parmenîe und er dar nâch
toward Parmenie and he there after

sô manlîch sînen vater rach
so manfully his father avenged

und sluoc den künic Morgân tôt:
and struck the king Morgan dead:

der leit in liebe des tôdes nôt.
he suffered in love of-the death distress.

Tristan, der wider zu Kurnewal
Tristan, who back to Cornwall

quam mit vröuden âne zal
came with joys without number

und dâ manlîchen gnuoc
and there manfully enough

den Affricân Morolden sluoc
the African Morold slew

unde vrîete daz lant
and freed the land

von dem zinse mit sîner hant,
from the tribute with his hand,

als im sîn manheit gebôt:
as him his manliness commanded:

der lac hie durch Isôten tôt.
he lay here for Isolde dead.

Der ellenthafte Tristant,
The valiant Tristan,

der den grimmen serpant
who the grim serpent

sluoc in Irlant bî Weisefort:
slew in Ireland by Wexford:

der lac vor leide in liebe mort.
he lay for sorrow in love dead.

Tristan, der ie nâch êren ranc
Tristan, who ever after honors struggled
und ûf dem sê den minnentranc
and on the sea the love-drink
unwizzende tranc ûz einem glase —
unknowing drank out-of a glass—
der triuwen muome, der kiusche base
the faithfulness's aunt, the chastity's cousin
tranc in mit im, die blunde Isôt:
drank it with him, the blonde Isolde:
der lac ouch in ir minne tôt.
he lay also in her love dead.
Tristant, der ritterschefte pflac
Tristan, who knighthood practiced
vil unde vil und mangen tac
much and much and many-a day
durch ir edele minne,
for her noble love,
der blunden küniginne,
of-the blonde queen,
und im dô zu Tintajol
and to-him then at Tintagel
was mit Isôten alsô wol
was with Isolde so well
und durch sie vuor in vremde lant
and for her went into foreign land
und ritterlîch mit sîner hant
and knightly with his hand
brach durch ir minne manic sper:
broke for her love many-a spear:
vor leide in liebe tôt lac er.
for sorrow in love dead lay he.

Der hôchgemuote Tristant,
The high-spirited Tristan,

der zu Gâles in daz lant
who to Wales into the land

vuor zu dem vürsten Gilân
went to the prince Gilan

und den risen Urgân
and the giant Urgan

sluoc und daz cleine hundelîn
slew and the small little-dog

mit dem menlîchen ellen sîn
with the manly valor his

Petitcriu menlîch erwarp:
Petitcriu manfully won:

von herzenliebe in leide er starp.
from heart's-love in sorrow he died.

Der wol ervarne Tristant,
The well traveled Tristan,

der in Arundêl daz lant
who into Arundel the land

quam zu dem vürsten Lovelîn
came to the prince Jovelin

und in von den vînden sîn
and him from the foes his

mit sîner hant erlôste
with his hand released

und im aldâ zu trôste
and to-him there as comfort

erwarp die wîzgehande Isôt:
won the white-handed Isolde:

der lac ouch hie zu Karke tôt.
he lay also here at Karke dead.

Nu wart sîn tôter lîcham
Now was his dead body

gebalsemt schône, als im gezam,
embalmed beautifully, as to-him befitted,

und ûf gebêrt und würze vil
and up laid-on-bier and spices many

ûf in geströuwet âne zil
on him strewn without limit

und wart gein münster getragen.
and was toward minster carried.

weinen, schrîen unde clagen
weeping, crying and lamenting

hôrte man in der stunde
heard one at the hour

von manges menschen munde;
from many-a person's mouth;

man, kint unde wîp
man, child and woman

Tristandes jungen süezen lîp
Tristan's young sweet body

clageten, wen er nû was tôt.
lamented, for he now was dead.

iedoch leit die meiste nôt
yet suffered the greatest distress

um in Isôt Blanschemanîs,
for him Isolde Blanschemanis,

sîn êlîch wîp. in mange wîs
his wedded wife. in many-a way

gienc sie nâch der bâren clagen,
went she after the bier lamenting,

unz er zu münster wart getragen
until he to minster was carried

und man nâch cristenlîchen dingen
and one after Christian things

im vigilie solde singen.
for-him vigil should sing.

die glocken wurden übir al
the bells were over all

geliutet. nû was Kurvenal
rung. now was Kurvenal

zu stade kumen vür die stat;
to shore come before the town;

Isôt ouch von dem schiffe trat,
Isolde also from the ship stepped,

von Kurnewal die künigin,
of Cornwall the queen,

und gienc mit Kurvenâle hin
and went with Kurvenal away

in die stat. dô hôrten sie
into the town. then heard they

die liute clagen dort und hie,
the people lament there and here,

hie und dort, ôt über al,
here and there, just over all,

und hôrten ouch den glockenschal.
and heard also the bell-sound.

daz argete in und vrâgten sân
that troubled them and asked then

daz volc um ern Tristân.
the folk about sir Tristan.

der vrâge quâmen sie in nôt:
of-the question came they into distress:

einer sprach: „nu ist er tôt
one spoke: „now is he dead

Tristant, der triuwen blüende,
Tristan, who of-faithfulness blooming,

der ie durch êre müende
who ever for honor wearying

was sînen ritterlîchen lîp.“
was his knightly body.“

„welch Tristan?“ sprach daz schœne wîp.
„which Tristan?“ spoke the fair woman.

sie hofte noch, daz etewer
she hoped still, that someone

hieze Tristan alsam er.
were-called Tristan like he.

jener sprach: „der Parmenois“.
that-one spoke: „the Parmenian“.

Kurvenal der curtois
Kurvenal the courteous

Isôten jêmerlîch sach an.
Isolde miserably looked at.

ir rôsenlichte varwe sân
her rose-bright color then

under ougen ir vorbleich
under eyes to-her paled

und al ir kraft ir gar entweich;
and all her strength from-her wholly fled;

zu der erden sie viel
to the earth she fell

in unmacht; kein wazzer wiel
in swoon; no water welled

ûz ougen der vil clâren:
out-of eyes of-the very bright-one:

lîp und herze ir wâren
body and heart to-her were

ersteinet von der unmacht.
petrified from the swoon.

nu wart ein wazzer balde brâcht;
now was a water quickly brought;

Kurvenal der labte sie.
Kurvenal he refreshed her.

ein cleinez creftel sie gevie,
a little little-strength she caught,

sô daz man kûme an ir enpfant,
so that one barely in her perceived,

ob sie lebte; und mit der hant
whether she lived; and with the hand

die minnenveige künegin
the love-doomed queen

wincte gein dem münster hin.
beckoned toward the minster away.

sprach sie nicht? nein, nie kein wort.
spoke she not? no, never any word.

Tristandes tôt ir krefte hort
Tristan's death her strength's hoard

ûz herzen ir gezücket het.
out-of heart to-her drawn had.

sie wêre gestorben an der stet,
she would-be died on the spot,

wan daz der trôst sie labete
except that the comfort her refreshed

und der gedinge ûf habete,
and the hope up held,

die veigen Isôten,
the doomed Isolde,

daz sie alsô tôten
that she so dead

Tristanden sehen solde.
Tristan see should.

Kurvenal, ir holde,
Kurvenal, to-her loyal,

die kreftelôse künegin
the strengthless queen

under armen vuorte hin
under arms led away

in daz münster; und sie sprach
into the minster; and she spoke

nie kein wort, weder wê noch ach,
never any word, neither woe nor ah,

wan sie daz winkte mit der hant
except she that beckoned with the hand

dort vaste hin, dâ Tristant
there hard away, where Tristan

lac tôter ûf der bâren.
lay dead on the bier.

Kurvenal die clâren
Kurvenal the bright-one

hin vuorte zu dem tôten.
away led to the dead-one.

den grôzen jâmer Isôten
the great misery of-Isolde

zu sagene sêre jâmert mich.
to tell sorely pains me.

wie tet die vrouwe? daz sage ich:
how did the lady? that tell I:

dô nam sie daz baldekîn
then took she the baldachin

von dem antlitze sîn
from the face his

und sach in alsô tôten an
and looked him so dead at

und viel ûf in und aber sân
and fell upon him and again then

dructe sie an der selben stunt
pressed she at the same hour

iren munt an sînen munt,
her mouth onto his mouth,

ir wangen an die wangen sîn
her cheeks onto the cheeks his

und ir blanken arme fîn
and her white arms fine

den tôten umbe viengen.
the dead-one around caught.

des tôdes stœze giengen
of-the death thrusts went

ir vaste gein dem herzen;
to-her hard toward the heart;

sîn tôt ir tôdes smerzen
his death to-her death's pain

vüegete, wan er ouch den tôt
contrived, for he also the death

durch sie leit und des tôdes nôt;
for her suffered and the death's distress;

der tôt inzwei daz herze ir brach.
the death in-two the heart to-her broke.

weder ach noch wê noch wê noch ach
neither ah nor woe nor woe nor ah

gesprach die küneginne nie:
spoke the queen never:

tôt ûf dem tôten lac sie hie.
dead upon the dead lay she here.

dem minnetôten wîbe
to-the love-dead woman

in sterbendem lîbe
in dying body

begonde ir herze krachen,
began her heart crack,

rechte als ob tûsent spachen
right as if thousand splinters

krachten von des viures nôt.
cracked from the fire's distress.

sus gelâgen die gelieben tôt:
thus lay the lovers dead:

Isôt die küneginne
Isolde the queen

die starp in sîner minne,
she died in his love,

Tristandes, wan er ouch vertarp
Tristan's, for he also perished

und in ir glüenden minne starp:
and in her glowing love died:

er starp durch sie und sie durch in.
he died for her and she for him.

Isôt die tôte künegin
Isolde the dead queen

sân zuhant und mit der vart
straightway at-once and with the speed

gebalsemet und beserket wart
embalmed and coffined was

und ûf gebêrt. den jâmers schal
and up laid-on-bier. the misery's sound

der vil getriuwe Kurvenal
the very faithful Kurvenal

begonde ruofen unde schallen.
began call and sound.

ûf sînen tôten hêrren vallen
upon his dead lord fall

sach man in jêmerlîchen gnuoc;
saw one him miserably enough;

mit beiden viusten er sich sluoc
with both fists he himself struck

gar swinde gein dem herzen;
very hard toward the heart;

die zeswen und die lerzen
the right and the left

in sîn hâr, ietwedere hant,
into his hair, each hand,

er vorwar und vaste want
he twisted and hard wound

und brach ez ûz der swarten.
and tore it out-of the scalp.

die künegîn die zarten,
the queen the tender,

die minnentôte Isôten,
the love-dead Isolde,

die kuste er alsô tôten.
her kissed he so dead.

den tôten Tristan an der stunt
the dead Tristan at the hour

kuste er ouch an den tôten munt.
kissed he also on the dead mouth.

von einem zu dem andern
from one to the other

wart er in jâmere wandern.
began he in misery to-wander.

sîn herze daz getriuwe
his heart the faithful

in triuwen stêtes niuwe
in faithfulness constantly new

was sam ein spiegel lûter.
was like a mirror clear.

er sprach: „hêrre trûter,
he spoke: „lord beloved,

trôst mînes lebenes, Tristân,
comfort of-my life, Tristan,

ach daz ich dich vorloren hân!
ah that I thee lost have!

und die süeze blunde Isôt,
and the sweet blonde Isolde,

ach daz die mit dir liget tôt,
ah that she with thee lies dead,

dîns herzen trût, die künegîn!“
thy heart's beloved, the queen!“

manicvalt der jâmer sîn
manifold the misery his

was und sîn clegelîcher dôn.
was and his lamentable tune.

er jach: „sich, werlt, diz ist dîn lôn,
he declared: „see, world, this is thy reward,

den dû zu jungest gibest in,
which thou at last givest to-them,

die dir zu dienest iren sin,
who to-thee to service their mind,

lîp und herze neigen:
body and heart incline:

den kanstu kurze erzeigen
it canst-thou briefly show

die valschen in der letzten stunt.
the false-one in the last hour.

du strîchest in honic in den munt
thou smearest to-them honey into the mouth

den alden und den jungen:
the old and the young:

swan sie dan mit den zungen
when they then with the tongues

dar nâch grîfende sîn,
there after grasping are,

sô tröufest dû in galle dar în.
so drippest thou to-them gall there in.

dîn rôsenbluome birt den dorn,
thy rose-flower bears the thorn,

und swâ du weize und ander korn
and wherever thou wheat and other grain

hin wirfest, swenne daz ûf gât,
away throwest, whenever that up goes,

sô birt niur distelen die sât.
so bears only thistles the seed.

dîn zucker ie des smeckens pflac,
thy sugar ever of-the tasting took-care,

daz enzunte sîn nâchsmac.
which kindled its aftertaste.

dîn süeze die sûret,
thy sweetness it sours,

dîn vröude die trûret
thy joy it mourns

zu jungest an des endes zagel.
at last at the end's tail.

dîn sunnenglast des schûres hagel
thy sun-gleam the shower's hail

bringet mit ir schîne:
brings with its shining:

daz wol an Rîwalîne
that well on Riwalin

wart ouch schîn, den dû betrüge
became also visible, whom thou deceivedst

und im daz helmel vür züge,
and to-him the little-helmet before drew,

unz daz er leit des tôdes nôt.
until that he suffered the death's distress.

nu liget sîn werder sun ouch tôt,
now lies his worthy son also dead,

Tristan, der liebe hêrre mîn,
Tristan, the dear lord my,

und Isôt die künegîn.
and Isolde the queen.

sich, werlt, die hât dîn süezikeit
see, world, them has thy sweetness

gecleidet in des tôdes cleit."
clad in the death's garment."

Mark, come to take the lovers' lives, finds them dead, and says he would have given Isolde to Tristan. A rose and a vine on their graves intertwine; the poet turns his readers to Christ.

Dô der getriuwe Kurvenal
When the faithful Kurvenal

alsus mit clageworten qual,
thus with lament-words tormented-himself,

inredes was achtende
meanwhile was heeding

der herzoge unde trachtende
the duke and pondering

in grôzem herzenleide,
in great heart's-sorrow,

wâ man dise beide
where one these both

gelieben solde begraben.
lovers should bury.

nu hête ouch Marke sich erhaben
now had also Mark himself raised

ûf den sê von Kurnewal.
onto the sea from Cornwall.

im tet der niuwe muntschal
to-him did the new mouth-talk

aber wê von herzen
again woe from heart

und vüegete im leides smerzen
and contrived to-him sorrow's pain

und bitterlîche swêre,
and bitter grief,

daz im entrunnen wêre
that from-him escaped were

Isôt; daz redete über al
Isolde; that said over all

daz volc aldâ zu Kurnewal.
the folk there at Cornwall.

dar umb der künic Marke
there for the king Mark

vuor über sê gein Karke.
went over sea toward Karke.

aber umbe welche geschicht
but about which happening

Isôt hin vuor, des enweste er nicht.
Isolde away went, of-that knew he not.

er wolde der küneginne
he would the queen

und Tristâne durch ir minne
and Tristan for their love

gevâret haben ir lebens.
lain-in-wait-for have their life.

weiz got, daz was vergebens
knows God, that was in-vain

und umbe sus: sie wâren tôt;
and about nothing: they were dead;

sîn neve Tristan, sîn wîp Isôt,
his nephew Tristan, his wife Isolde,

sîn wîp Isôt, sîn neve Tristan,
his wife Isolde, his nephew Tristan,

die wâren tôt. der guote man,
they were dead. the good man,

von Kurnewal künic Marke,
of Cornwall king Mark,

quam in die stat zu Karke.
came into the town at Karke.

Dem herzogen Lovelîne
To-the duke Jovelin

wart schiere die kunft sîne
became quickly the coming his

und an der stete bekant.
and on the spot known.

er zogete gein im sâ zuhant
he went toward him straightway at-once

und sagete im in den leiden
and told him in the sorrows

von den gelieben beiden,
of the lovers both,

wie Tristan und die blunde Isôt
how Tristan and the blonde Isolde

ieglîchez durch daz andere tôt
each for the other dead

in herzenliebe was gelegen.
in heart's-love was lain.

Marke der küniclîche degen
Mark the kingly warrior

ersiufzite inneclîche und sprach:
sighed inwardly and spoke:

„wê mir, wê und immer ach!
„woe me, woe and ever ah!

und sint sie tôt, wie kumet daz?"
and (if)-are they dead, how comes that?"

der herzoge sprach: „daz kan iuch baz
the duke spoke: „that can you better

Kurvenal bescheiden
Kurvenal inform

dan ieman von in beiden."
than anyone of them both."

den künic gein dem münster hin
the king toward the minster away

vuorten sie. dâ vant er in,
led they. there found he him,

den werden Kurvenâlen,
the worthy Kurvenal,

in clegelîchen quâlen
in lamentable torments

alclagende bî den tôten dort,
all-lamenting by the dead there,

der jâmer unde jâmers hort
who misery and misery's hoard

behûset hête in herzen.
housed had in heart.

der künic mit herzensmerzen
the king with heart's-pain

alsiufzende vrâgete in
sighing asked him

von Tristan und der künegin.
of Tristan and the queen.

Kurvenal vorsweic im nicht;
Kurvenal kept-silent to-him nothing;

er seite im alle die geschicht
he told him all the happening

von ir vuore und von ir leben,
of their conduct and of their life,

wie in der tranc wart gegeben
how to-them the drink was given

ûz dem glase dort ûf dem sê
out-of the glass there on the sea

und wie die minne in tet sô wê.
and how the love to-them did so woe.

„von dem tranke der minne
„from the drink of-the love

ir herze und alle ir sinne
their heart and all their senses

wart in beiden enzunt,
was in both kindled,

daz sie enmochten keine stunt
that they might no hour

die lenge von einander sîn.“
the length from each-other be.“

dô er im von der künegîn
when he to-him of the queen

und ouch von Tristande
and also of Tristan

* * *
(lacuna)

und im gesaget dannoch,
and to-him told even-then,

wie Tristan zu Gamaroch
how Tristan at Gamaroch

wart mit dem gelüppe wunt,
became with the poison wounded,

und er ez allez im tet kunt
and he it all to-him made known

von ende zu ende:
from end to end:

der vröuden enlende,
the of-joys alien,

der trôstlôse Marke,
the comfortless Mark,

der clagete dô vil starke
he lamented then very strongly

sînes neven tôten lîp.
his nephew's dead body.

er clagete ouch daz süeze wîp.
he lamented also the sweet woman.

„Owê!“ sprach Marke, „Tristant,
„Alas!“ spoke Mark, „Tristan,

hêtes dû daz êrste mir bekant
hadst thou that first to-me known

und hêtest die gelegenheit
and hadst the situation

von anegenge mir geseit,
from beginning to-me said,

du süezer Rîwalînes barn,
thou sweet Riwalin's child,

ich hêtez allez undervarn;
I would-have-it all prevented;

ich hête dînem lîbe
I would-have to-thy person

gegeben zu einem wîbe
given as a wife

Isôten, mîne vrouwen zart,
Isolde, my lady tender,

ê sie mir getrûwet wart,
before she to-me wedded was,

sô wêre ich überic gewesen
so would-be I free been

der sünde und wêrit ir genesen.“
of-the sin and would-be you saved.“

er clagete alsô clegelîch,
he lamented so lamentably,

daz sie alle gemeinlîch
that they all together

mit im clagen begunden.
with him to-lament began.

der herzoge an den stunden
the duke at the hours

clagete und Karsîe,
lamented and Karsie,

die süeze, valsches vrîe,
the sweet, of-falseness free,

und die wîzgehande Isôt,
and the white-handed Isolde,

daz die nicht mit den tôten tôt
that she not with the dead dead

vor leide lac, daz ander zwâr
for sorrow lay, the other truly

tet sie mit gebêrden gar.
did she with bearings wholly.

In disen leiden Lovelîn
In these sorrows Jovelin

pflac wol die nacht des gastes sîn.
took-care well the night of-the guest his.

des morgens vruo die tôten,
in-the morning early the dead,

Tristan und Isôten,
Tristan and Isolde,

man gar heileclîch besanc.
one very holily sang-masses-for.

daz volc zum opfer allez dranc
the folk to-the offering all pressed

wol nâch cristenlîcher ê.
well after Christian law.

dar nâch truoc man sie zu der sê;
there after bore one them to the sea;

dem edelen künige Marke
to-the noble king Mark

legte mans in sîne barke.
laid one-them into his barque.

der vuorte sie dô beide
he carried them then both

mit grôzer herzenleide
with great heart's-sorrow

mit im heim zu Tintajol.
with him home to Tintagel.

burc und stat wart jâmers vol
castle and town became of-misery full

und clegelîcher mêre.
and of-lamentable tidings.

der vrume und der gewêre
the upright and the true

künic hête schiere besant
king had quickly summoned

Kurnewâle und Engelant,
Cornwall and England,

vürsten und lanthêrren,
princes and land-lords,

die minren und die mêrren,
the lesser and the greater,

bischove und prêlâte;
bishops and prelates;

die quâmen alle drâte
they came all quickly

gemeine hin zu Tintajol.
together thither to Tintagel.

ir aller herze jâmers vol
of-them all heart of-misery full

wart und clegelîcher nôt,
became and of-lamentable distress,

dô sie vernâmen, daz Isôt
when they heard, that Isolde

was tôt und ouch her Tristant.
was dead and also sir Tristan.

vor leide ir ieglîcher want
for sorrow of-them each wrung

sîne hende alweinende;
his hands all-weeping;

die vrouwen ouch erscheinende
the ladies also showing

wâren clegelîche nôt:
were lamentable distress:

daz half ôt nicht, sie wâren tôt.
that helped just nothing, they were dead.

Nu liez der künic Marke
Now let the king Mark

wirken zwêne sarke
work two coffins

von edelem mermelsteine:
of noble marble-stone:

den reinen und die reine
the pure-one and the pure-one

vorworchte man dar inne.
walled-in one there in.

der tôten küneginne
of-the dead queen

houbet man dâ schône
head one there beautifully

mit zweier lande crône
with two lands' crown

in dem sarke schœnete,
in the coffin beautified,

wan sie die gecrœnete
for she the crowned
küneginne was bekant
queen was known
von Kurnewal und von Engelant.
of Cornwall and of England.
Zu Tintajôle sie begraben
At Tintagel they buried
wurden, als wir vernumen haben,
were, as we heard have,
ûf der burc, nicht in der stat.
on the castle, not in the town.
der künic die bischove bat
the king the bishops bade
und alle die prêlâten,
and all the prelates,
daz sie doch gerne tâten,
which they yet gladly did,
ein clôster stiften aldâ:
a cloister found there:
a l'estelle sente Mariâ,
at the-star saint Mary,
sus wart daz clôster genant,
thus was the cloister named,
daz mangem manne ist wol bekant.
which to-many-a man is well known.
ich sage ez iuch, welt irs nicht enpern:
I tell it you, (if)-will you-it not forgo:
ez heizet zu sente Merienstern
it is-called at saint Mary's-star
in allen diutschen zungen,
in all German tongues,

dâ die zwei süezen jungen
where the two sweet young-ones

bestatet und begraben sîn.
laid-to-rest and buried are.

künic Marke sich selbe dar în
king Mark himself self there in

begap und Kurvenâle
gave and to-Kurvenal

gap er dô Kurnewâle
gave he then Cornwall

daz künicrîch und Engelant,
the kingdom and England,

die beide Kurvenâles hant
which both Kurvenal's hand

dienten unz an sînen tôt.
served until to his death.

Tristan und sîn vrouwe Isôt
Tristan and his lady Isolde

nicht verre von einander
not far from each-other

in zwein sarken glander
in two coffins gleaming

lâgen in der erden.
lay in the earth.

ûf Tristan den werden
on Tristan the worthy

liez der künic ûz erkorn
let the king out chosen

pelzen einen rôsendorn,
graft a rose-thorn,

Marke, der sich dar het begeben;
Mark, who himself there had given;

und einen grüenen wînreben
and a green grapevine

liez er ûf Isôten
let he on Isolde

pelzen. den zwein tôten
graft. to-the two dead

gelieben edele und hôchgeborn
lovers noble and high-born

der wînrebe und der rôsendorn
the grapevine and the rose-thorn

wurzelten schône an der stunt
rooted beautifully at the hour

ieglîchem in sîns herzen grunt,
in-each in his heart's ground,

dâ noch der glüende minnetranc
where still the glowing love-drink

in den tôten herzen ranc
in the dead hearts wrestled

und sîn art erzeigete:
and its nature showed:

ieglîch rîs dô neigete
each shoot then inclined

dem anderen ob den grebern sich;
to-the other above the graves itself;

und in einander minnenclich
and into each-other lovingly

vlechten, werren unde weben
twine, tangle and weave

den rôsenpusch und den wînreben
the rose-bush and the grapevine

gar bescheidenlîch man sach.
very plainly one saw.

als Thômas von Britânje sprach
as Thomas of Britain spoke

von den zwein süezen jungen
of the two sweet young-ones

in lampartischer zungen,
in Lombard tongue,

alsô hân ich iuch die wârheit
so have I to-you the truth

in diutsche von in zwein geseit.
in German of them two said.

Nu dar, ir werlde minner,
Now thither, you world's lovers,

sehet alle in disen spiegel her
look all into this mirror hither

und schouwet, wie in aller vrist
and behold, how in all time

hin slîchende unde genclîch ist
away sliding and transient is

die werltlîche minne!
the worldly love!

Isôt die küneginne,
Isolde the queen,

swie die in sîner minne bran
however she in his love burned

und in ir minne her Tristan,
and in her love sir Tristan,

ez nam doch swachez ende.
it took yet weak end.

ein ieglîch cristen wende
an each Christian turn

herze, muot und sinne
heart, spirit and senses

hin zu der wâren minne,
away to the true love,

die unzurgenclîch immer ist.
which unperishing ever is.

wir cristen sulen minnen Crist,
we Christians shall love Christ,

der von der megde wart geborn
who of the maiden was born

und uns den blüenden rôsendorn
and to-us the blooming rose-thorn

bezeichent wol in aller stunt;
signifies well at every hour;

der an dem criuze durch uns wunt
who on the cross for us wounded

wart in den tôt pînlîche gnuoc;
became into the death painfully enough;

und der die rôten rôsen truoc
and who the red roses bore

mit bitterlîchem smerzen
with bitter pain

durch uns an sînem herzen,
for us on his heart,

an vüezen und an henden.
on feet and on hands.

wir cristen sullen wenden
we Christians shall turn

an in lîp, sêle und unser leben,
to him body, soul and our life,

wan wir ez sîn die wînreben,
for we it are the grapevines,

die ûz im liez enspriezen er
which out-of him let sprout he

und uns der trûben vruchtbêr
and us of-the grapes fruitful

hât gemachet, daz wir hân
has made, that we have

sin und vernunft. nu ruofe wir an
sense and reason. now call we on

den vater des himelischen suns,
the father of-the heavenly son,

daz er lâ vlechten sich in uns
that he let twine himself in us

den wâren blüenden rôsendorn,
the true blooming rose-thorn,

Crist sînen zarten sun einborn,
Christ his tender son only-born,

und uns die genâde gebe,
and to-us the grace give,

daz wir alsam die wînrebe
that we like the grapevine

uns vlechten wider in in
ourselves twine back into him

und unser herze und unseren sin
and our heart and our mind

in im verwerren und verweben,
in him entangle and interweave,

als man sach den wînreben
as one saw the grapevine

sich vlechten in den rôsendorn
itself twine into the rose-thorn

über den gelieben ûz erkorn,
over the lovers out chosen,

die in der liebe ir ende nâmen.
who in the love their end took.

nu sprechet âmen, âmen, âmen!
now say amen, amen, amen!